

**ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP**

**Engineer Company,  
Engineer Combat Battalion,  
Heavy Division**

**SEPTEMBER 2003**

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release;  
distribution is unlimited.

**HEADQUARTERS,  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY**

**This publication is available at Army  
Knowledge Online ([www.us.army.mil](http://www.us.army.mil))  
and the General Dennis J. Reimer  
Training and Doctrine Digital Library at  
([www.adtdl.army.mil](http://www.adtdl.army.mil))**

# **MISSION TRAINING PLAN For The Engineer Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Heavy Division**

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<u>PAGE</u>
<b>Table of Contents .....</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>Preface .....</b>	<b>ii</b>
<b>Chapter 1. Unit Training .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
<b>Chapter 2. Training Matrixes .....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
<b>Chapter 3. Mission Outlines/Training Plans .....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
<b>Chapter 4. Training Exercise .....</b>	<b>4-1</b>
<b>Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines .....</b>	<b>5-1</b>
<b>Chapter 6. External Evaluation .....</b>	<b>6-1</b>
<b>Appendix A .....</b>	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B .....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C .....</b>	<b>C-1</b>
<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>Glossary-1</b>
<b>References .....</b>	<b>References-1</b>
<b>Feedback .....</b>	<b>Feedback-1</b>

---

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 5-335-65-MTP, dated 26 July 2002.

## PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides active component (AC) and reserve component (RC) training managers with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. This MTP aligns with and is part of the United States (US) Army Training and Tactical Doctrine Program. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are expected to be executed with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be raised, but they may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the engineer company, engineer combat battalion, heavy division table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 05337L000 and 05337F100.

The proponent for this publication is HQ, TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both men and women.

## CHAPTER 1

### Unit Training

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit training program will depend on the—

- Unit mission-essential task list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher echelon training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit training program consists of the following publications:

a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-332-68-MTP for the headquarters, headquarters detachment, engineer brigade. This MTP indicates the battalion training program.

b. ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP for the engineer combat battalion, engineer brigade, heavy division, battalion staff. This MTP indicates the relationship of the battalion training program to the next higher-level training program.

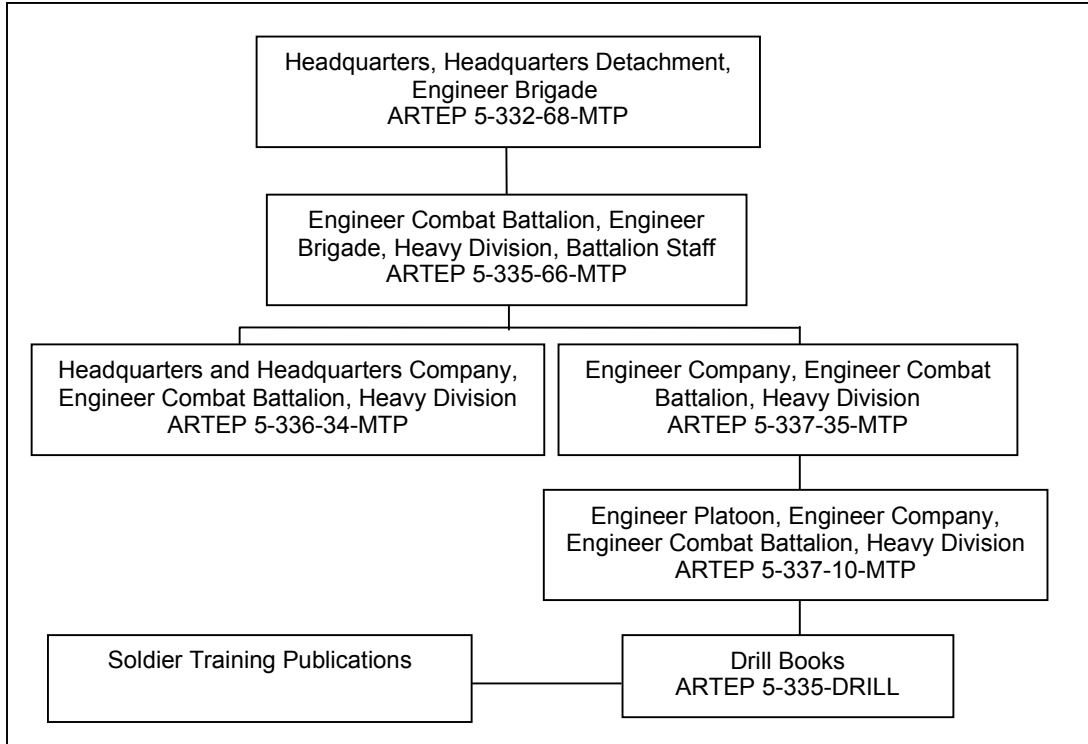
c. ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP for the headquarters and headquarters company, engineer combat battalion, heavy division. This MTP indicates the relationship of the support company's training program to the battalion's training program.

d. ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP for the engineer platoon, engineer company, engineer combat battalion, heavy division. This MTP indicates the relationship of the platoon training program to the company training program.

e. ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP for the engineer company, engineer combat battalion, heavy division. This MTP indicates the relationship of the company training program to the battalion training program.

f. ARTEP 5-335-DRILL for the engineer drills. The unit must sustain drills. They are US Army standard and may not be modified.

g. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialties (MOSs) and skill levels.



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship**

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendices.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of an MTP. This chapter explains how to use an MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the mission and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercise, consists of a sample training exercise. This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed sample scenario. It can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) countertasks. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs can be trained separately, in a situational training exercise (STX), in a field training exercise (FTX), or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, composes the training exercise in Chapter 4.

(1) Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

(a) Elements. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.

(b) **Task.** This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

(c) **Reference.** This identifies the publication used to develop the task and is in parenthesis following the task number. If more than one reference is used, the reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

(d) **Iteration.** This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The M identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

(e) **Commander/leader assessment.** This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to assess the overall capability of the organization to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

- **T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
- **P - Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
- **U - Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

(f) **Conditions.** This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to perform the collective task.

(g) **Task standards.** This states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit training status by using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

(h) **Task steps and performance measures.** This is a list of actions that the unit is to perform to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with any supporting individual tasks and their references. An asterisk (\*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of the task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard. The task step may contain performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step.

(i) **GO/NO-GO column.** This column is provided for annotating the performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

(j) **Task performance/evaluation summary block.** This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit demonstrated

performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

(k) Supporting individual tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each individual task are listed.

(l) Supporting collective tasks. This is a listing of all supporting collective tasks required to correctly perform the task. The task number and task title for each collective task are listed.

(m) Opposing forces tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or lose to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy being portrayed.

(2) Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Sample Operation Order, contains a sample operation order (OPORD) to be used with the exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Threat Analysis, describes local, regional, and global threats and special situations that impact operations.

i. Appendix C, Metric Conversion Chart, contains an English-to-metric measurement conversion chart.

#### 1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

- Provide engineer support to countermobility operations.
- Fight as infantry.
- Conduct general engineer operations.
- Provide engineer support to mobility operations.
- Perform survivability construction.
- Sustain unit operations.
- Defend the unit.
- Conduct unit survivability operations.



b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the ability of the unit to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support unit missions are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of unit missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Training Principles. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 7-0.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program, developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions, will be a component of the Army Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. CATS will be embedded in the Standard Army Training System (SATS), version 4.1 and higher. The Web site for this information is <http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac>.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive menu for training. These strategies reflect that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit training strategy is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects those tasks required to train his METL from this MTP. The training strategies to be provided in SATS 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The unit training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit training strategy are discussed below.

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver- and collective-training strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FMs.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the unit training strategy is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit METL and the commander's assessment of his unit training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit training strategy.

e. When developing the unit training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL.

1-7. Training Conduct. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 7-0 and 25-101. The commander performs the following:

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and the FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, the command guidance. If they do not support the guidance or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix provides a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. Orient the training toward the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how to use multiechelon training for the best results.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed, and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. Safety. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command that is appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to

help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines the ability of the unit to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

- (1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.
- (2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.
- (3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.
- (4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.
- (5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. **Risk Management.** Risk management addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It helps commanders and leaders identify and predict the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment. Risk management is a five-step, cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5.

**Step 1.** Identify Any Hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

**Step 2.** Assess the Hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk assessment matrix in Figure 1-2 is a tool to use for assessing hazards.

			HAZARD PROBABILITY				
			FREQUENT	PROBABLE	OCCASIONAL	REMOTE	IMPROBABLE
			A	B	C	D	E
E F F E C T	CATASTROPHIC	I	EXTREMELY HIGH		HIGH		LOW
	CRITICAL	II	HIGH	HIGH		LOW	LOW
	MARGINAL	III	HIGH	MEDIUM		LOW	LOW
	NEGLIGIBLE	IV	LOW	LOW		LOW	LOW

**Severity**

Catastrophic	Death, permanent total disability, system loss, major property damage
Critical	Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of three months, major system damage, significant property damage
Marginal	Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system/property damage
Negligible	First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment

**Probability**

Frequent	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs often in career/equipment or both service life Continuously experienced
Probable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs several times in career/equipment service life Occurs frequently
Occasional	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life Occurs sporadically or several times in inventory service life
Remote	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Possible to occur in career/equipment service life Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life
Improbable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life Possible, but not probable; occurs only very rarely

**Risk Levels**

Extremely High	Loss of ability to accomplish mission
High	Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards
Medium	Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission
Low	Little or no impact on mission accomplishment

**Figure 1-2. Risk Assessment Matrix**

**Step 3.** Make Risk Decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operation. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any remaining risk decisions at the proper level of command.

**Step 4.** Implement Controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

**Step 5.** Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow-up and an after-action review (AAR). Develop lessons learned.

c. Chain of Command. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. Responsibilities of the chain of command include—

- (1) Commanders.
  - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
  - (b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.
  - (c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.
  - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
  - (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.
- (2) Staff.
  - (a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk reduction options for training.
  - (b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.
  - (c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.
  - (d) Assess safety performance during training.
  - (e) Evaluate safety performance during AARs.
- (3) Subordinate leaders.
  - (a) Apply effective risk management concepts and methods consistently to the operations they lead.
  - (b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.
- (4) Individual soldiers.
  - (a) Report unsafe conditions and acts, and correct the situation when possible.
  - (b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.
  - (c) Take responsibility for personal safety.
  - (d) Work as a team member.
  - (e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. Fratricide. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy its equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide prevention is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is, by definition, an accident. Risk assessment and risk management are mechanisms used to control the incidence of fratricide.

(1) Causes. The primary causes of fratricide are—

(a) Direct-fire control plan failures. These failures result when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(b) Land navigation failures. These failures result when units stray out of sector, report incorrect locations, or become disoriented.

(c) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(d) Inadequate control measures. These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(e) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(f) Weapons errors. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(g) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINES), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

(2) Results. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the ability of the unit to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(a) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.

(b) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.

(c) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(d) Oversupervision of units.

(e) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(f) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(g) Loss of initiative.

(h) Disrupted operations.

(i) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

**Step 1.** Identify Any Hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during the analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires the identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

**Step 2.** Assess the Hazards. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-3). Consider the severity of environmental degradation when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrix.

Environmental Risk Assessment Work Sheet						
Environmental Area:	Rating:					
Unit Operations	Risk Impact					
Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form						
Unit Operation Environmental Issues	Movement of Heavy Vehicles/Systems	Movement of Personnel and Light Vehicles/Systems	Assembly Area Activities	Field Maintenance of Equipment	Garrison Maintenance of Equipment	Risk Rating
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous material/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						

Risk Categories			
Category	Range	Environmental Damage	Decision Maker
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division commander
Extremely high	150-175	Severe	MACOM commander

Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

**Step 3.** Make Environmental Risk Decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

**Step 4.** Brief the Chain of Command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

**Step 5.** Implement Controls. Implement environmental-protection measures into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

**Step 6.** Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental-protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe the standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally conducted by a HQ that is two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, and then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows the correction of performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please make your comments on DA Form 2028 or the questionnaire provided at the end of this MTP and send to the address reflected in the preface.



**CHAPTER 2**

**Training Matrixes**

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit personnel. The mission identification table listed in Figure 2-1 provides mission identification for the unit.

<b>Mission Identification Table</b> <b>Mission Title</b>
Provide engineer support to countermobility operations
Fight as infantry
Conduct general engineer operations
Provide engineer support to mobility operations
Perform survivability construction
Sustain unit operations
Defend the unit
Conduct unit survivability operations

**Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table**

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating system (BOS), indicated by an X in the matrix. The BOSs that are used in this matrix are defined in United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using the collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>Countermobility</b>	<b>Fight as Infantry</b>	<b>General Engineering</b>	<b>Mobility</b>
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>					
05-1-0014	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-1-6000	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-0005	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-1013	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance	<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-3-0402.05-R01A	Perform a Route Classification	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment				
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>					
05-1-0007	Fight as Engineers	<b>X</b>			<b>X</b>

Collective Tasks		Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
05-1-0011	Reorganize as Infantry		X		
05-1-1001	Plan Breaching Operations	X			X
05-1-3004	Fight as Infantry		X		
05-1-3007	Conduct Quartering Party Operations	X	X		X
05-2-0015	Report Obstacle Information	X		X	X
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire		X		
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)	X	X		
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X		
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy	X		X	X
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush	X	X		
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March		X		
07-3-1135.05-T01A	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas		X		
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically		X		
<b>Employ Firepower</b>					
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)	X	X	X	X
<b>Protect the Force</b>					
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X			
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions				
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations				

Collective Tasks		Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
03-3-C222.05-T01A	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C223.05-T01A	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C224.05-T01A	Conduct Operational Decontamination				
03-3-C226.05-T01A	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area				
05-1-1002	Direct Combat Road or Trail Construction			X	X
05-1-1004	Support a River Crossing Operation	X			X
05-1-2001	Emplace Situational Obstacles	X			
05-1-3001	Direct Survivability Construction				
05-1-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X		X	
05-1-3003	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X			
05-1-3005	Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield				X
05-1-3006	Establish Jobsite Security	X	X	X	X
05-2-0508	Plan for Survivability Operations				
05-2-1003	Conduct Breaching Operations				X
05-2-1005	Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations	X			X
05-2-2013	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles	X			
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions	X			
05-3-0210	Disable Critical Equipment and Material	X			
05-3-2010	Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield	X			
05-3-2011	Emplace a Volcano Minefield	X			
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position				
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)				

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>Countermobility</b>	<b>Fight as Infantry</b>	<b>General Engineering</b>	<b>Mobility</b>
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures				
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures				
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms				
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>					
05-1-0009	Manage Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)/Field Trains				
05-1-7001	Perform Administrative Operations				
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies	<b>X</b>			
05-2-0050	Coordinate for Medical Services	<b>X</b>			
05-2-1068	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
05-2-7000	Conduct Combat Refueling Operations	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)				
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions				
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations				
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply				
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support				
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)				
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System				

Collective Tasks		Countermobility	Fight as Infantry	General Engineering	Mobility
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)				
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations				
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>					
05-1-2000	Prepare an Obstacle Plan	X			
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)	X			X
05-2-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex	X		X	X
05-2-0004	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Staff	X			X
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures	X	X	X	X
05-2-0064	Establish a Command Post (CP)	X	X	X	X
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans	X			X
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)	X	X	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X	X	X
12-2-0321.05-T01A	Maintain Company Strength				
12-2-0338.05-T01A	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability				

Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
<b>Develop Intelligence</b>					
05-1-0014	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection	X	X	X	X
05-1-6000	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements	X	X	X	X
05-1-6002	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products		X	X	X
05-2-0005	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	X	X	X	X
05-2-1013	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance		X		
05-3-0402.05-R01A	Perform a Route Classification				
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment		X	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X
<b>Deploy/Conduct Maneuver</b>					
05-1-0007	Fight as Engineers	X			
05-1-0011	Reorganize as Infantry				
05-1-1001	Plan Breaching Operations				
05-1-3004	Fight as Infantry				
05-1-3007	Conduct Quartering Party Operations		X	X	X
05-2-0015	Report Obstacle Information		X		
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire			X	X
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)			X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)		X	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy		X	X	X
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush		X	X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March		X	X	X
07-3-1135.05-T01A	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas			X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically			X	X
<b>Employ Firepower</b>					
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)		X		

Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
<b>Protect the Force</b>					
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey		X	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions			X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack			X	X
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack			X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike			X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack			X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area			X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations			X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack			X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack			X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A	Conduct Operational Decontamination		X	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area		X	X	X
05-1-1002	Direct Combat Road or Trail Construction				
05-1-1004	Support a River Crossing Operation		X		X
05-1-2001	Emplace Situational Obstacles				
05-1-3001	Direct Survivability Construction	X			
05-1-3002	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X	X	X
05-1-3003	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack		X	X	X
05-1-3005	Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield		X	X	X
05-1-3006	Establish Jobsite Security	X	X	X	X
05-2-0508	Plan for Survivability Operations	X			X

Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
05-2-1003	Conduct Breaching Operations				
05-2-1005	Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations				
05-2-2013	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles				
05-2-3000	Control Construction of Survivability Positions	X		X	X
05-3-0210	Disable Critical Equipment and Material		X	X	X
05-3-2010	Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield				
05-3-2011	Emplace a Volcano Minefield			X	
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position			X	X
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)		X	X	X
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures		X	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures		X	X	X
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms		X	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>					
05-1-0009	Manage Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)/Field Trains		X		
05-1-7001	Perform Administrative Operations		X		
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies		X	X	X
05-2-0050	Coordinate for Medical Services		X	X	X
05-2-1068	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points	X	X	X	X
05-2-7000	Conduct Combat Refueling Operations		X	X	X



Collective Tasks		Survivability Construction	Sustain Operations	Unit Defense	Unit Survivability
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)		X		X
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures		X	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions		X	X	X
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations		X	X	X
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply		X		X
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support		X		X
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)		X		X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System		X		X
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)		X	X	X
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations		X	X	X
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>					
05-1-2000	Prepare an Obstacle Plan				X
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)	X	X	X	X
05-2-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex	X	X	X	X
05-2-0004	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Staff				
05-2-0018	Conduct Report Procedures	X	X	X	X
05-2-0064	Establish a Command Post (CP)	X	X	X	X
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans				
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)	X	X	X	X
11-3-0214.05-T01A	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X

<b>Collective Tasks</b>		<b>Survivability Construction</b>	<b>Sustain Operations</b>	<b>Unit Defense</b>	<b>Unit Survivability</b>
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>X</b>
12-2-0321.05-T01A	Maintain Company Strength		<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>
12-2-0338.05-T01A	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability		<b>X</b>		<b>X</b>

**Figure 2-2. Mission-To-Collective Task Matrix**

## CHAPTER 3

### Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. **General.** The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their support tasks. Each outline provides the trainer with a diagram of the unit mission, sample FTXs and/or STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them.

3-2. **Mission Outlines.** Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the unit ability to perform its missions. The mission outlines, Tables 3-1 through 3-5, provide the commander with a visual outline of his unit missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

**Table 3-1. Sample Countermobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON COUNTERMOBILITY</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0307	Construct a Log Obstacle
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures

**Table 3-2. Sample General Engineering Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY GENERAL ENGINEERING</b>	
Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0726	Conduct Dump Truck Hauling Operations
05-3-0313	Construct Revetments
05-3-0402.05-R01A	Perform a Route Classification
05-3-0611	Construct/Repair a Bridge Abutment
05-3-0710	Assemble and Install Culverts
05-3-0765	Construct or Repair a Sewerage System
05-3-0778	Construct or Repair a Steel Frame Pre-engineered Structure
05-3-0784	Construct/Repair Headwalls
05-3-0787	Construct/Repair a Wood Frame Structure
05-3-0789	Construct/Repair a Concrete Structure
05-3-0790	Construct/Repair Electrical Utilities
05-3-0791	Construct/Repair a Water Distribution System
05-3-0792	Install Coupled Pipeline
05-3-0904	Establish Jobsite Security
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)

**Table 3-3. Sample Mobility Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON MOBILITY</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-0114	Conduct Breaching Operations
05-3-0404	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-0609	Operate River Crossing Sites
05-3-0603	Prepare an Expedient Ford
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area

**Table 3-4. Sample Perform Survivability Construction Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER PLATOON PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-3-0304	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions
05-3-0305	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0312	Construct Bunkers and Shelters

**Table 3-5. Sample Unit Survivability/Unit Defense Mission Outline**

<b>ENGINEER COMPANY UNIT SURVIVABILITY/UNIT DEFENSE</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft

## CHAPTER 4

### Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample FTX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the FTX by exercise number, title, and page number.

**Table 4-1. FTX Exercise**

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
FTX 5-1-E0001	Conduct Mobility Operations	4-1

4-2. Field Training Exercise. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit to train its critical wartime missions. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in STXs.

4-3. Situational Training Exercise. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. STXs provide the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. STXs—

- Provide repetitive training of missions.
- Allow the training to focus on identified weaknesses.
- Allow the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.
- Save time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

**ENGINEER COMPANY  
FTX  
5-1-E0001  
CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS**

1. Objective. This sample exercise trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the company operation, Conduct Mobility Operations.
2. Interface. This exercise supports the task force (TF) requirement to conduct combat operations.
3. Training Enhancers.

a. The training matrix in Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the company mission. Training that will improve its ability to perform its mission are—

(1) Planning, controlling, and coordinating mobility operations. Training may be conducted in garrison and/or local training areas by one of the following methods:

- (a) Classroom instruction.
- (b) A map exercise (MAPEX) combined with a sand table exercise.
- (c) A command post exercise (CPX) conducted in garrison.
- (d) A command field exercise (CFX) conducted in a field environment.

- (e) A tactical exercise without troops (TEWT).
- (f) A communications exercise (COMEX).
- (g) Simulations and games.

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:

- (a) Aggressive unit sports and physical-fitness programs.
- (b) Leader and individual confidence courses.
- (c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.
- (d) Awareness of the unit heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order (WO) and ends upon the completion of area damage control (ADC) activities. Figure 4-1 illustrates the general scenario of the exercise. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario, and Figure 4-2 is the movement order for the scenario.

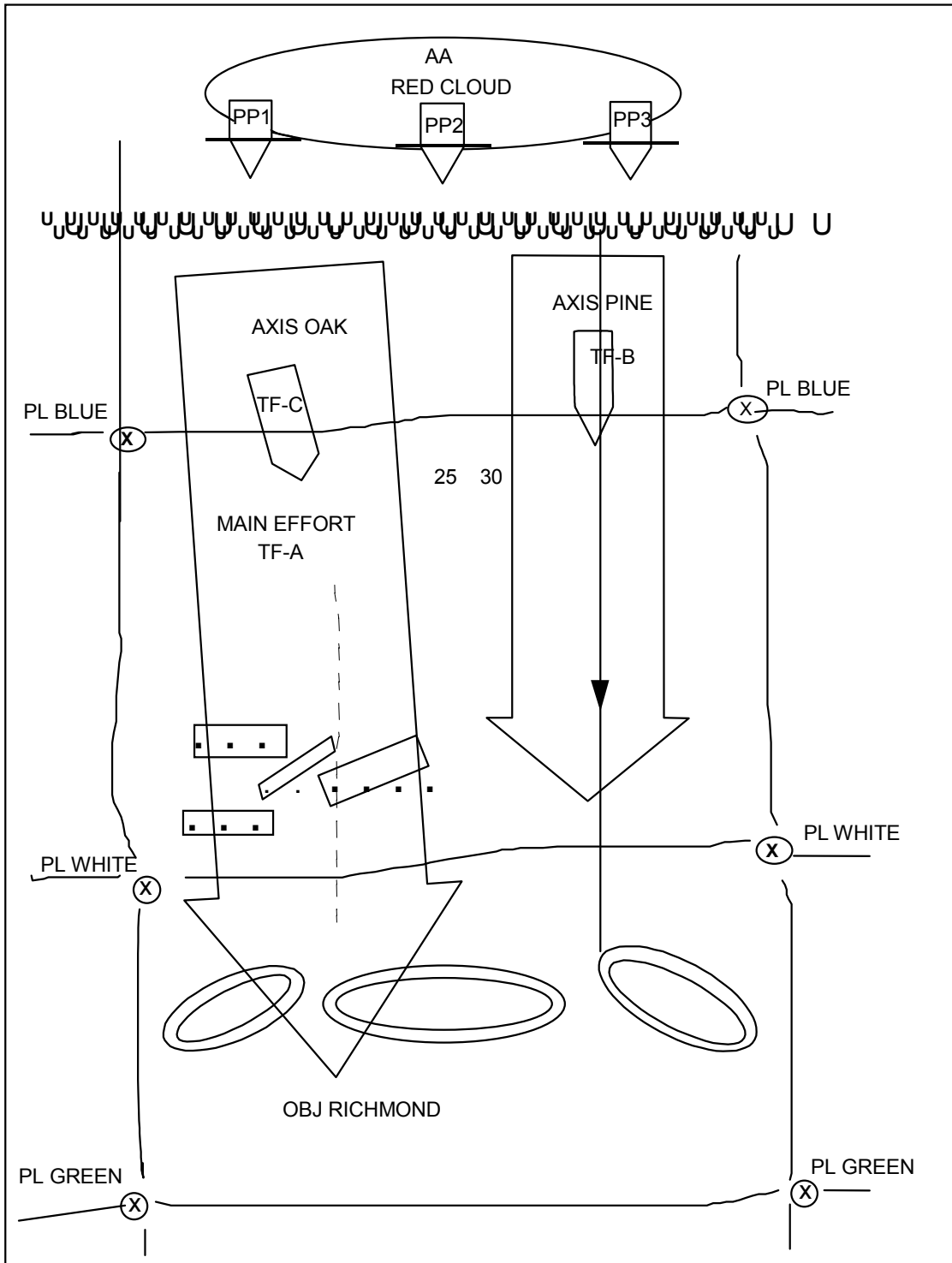


Figure 4-1. General Scenario FTX

**Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario**

Event	Action	Estimated Time
<u>Module 1</u>		
1	Receive a Bridge WO	15 minutes
2	Receive a Bridge Movement Order	30 minutes
3	Plan and Issue a Movement Order	2.5 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6 hours
5	Occupy an AA	4 hours
6	Receive a Brigade WO	15 minutes
7	Receive a Brigade OPORD	2 hours
8	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 2</u>		
9	Conduct Precombat Operations	20 hours
	Plan/Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	8 hours
	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	4 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	3 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Annex	1 hour
10	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
<u>Module 3</u>		
11	Monitor the Conduct of the Attack, and Coordinate and Issue FRAGOs, as appropriate	9.5 hours
<u>Module 4</u>		
12	Move to the AA	4 hours
13	Conduct a Final AAR	2 hours
*	Defend Against an Air Attack	
*	Control Combat Formations	
*	Prepare an OPORD	
*	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	
*	Manage Battlefield Stress	
*	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	
*	Perform PMCS	
*	Operate a Net Control Station	
*	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Station	
	ENDEX	
		<b>Total time: 69 hours</b>
<b>*These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</b>		



### Movement Order

1. SITUATION. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn to vicinity NK 403087. It is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack. The division is moving to occupy an assembly area (AA) in preparation of combat operations.
2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade moves by tactical road march via route Monroe, commencing 011600 hours to AA vicinity NK 243567. The order of march is TF A, TF B, and TF C. The interval between serials is 30 minutes. Close on the AA no later than 011900 hours.
3. EXECUTION.
  - a. Concept of Movement. TF A will be the lead element with assistance from the military police (MP) for traffic control. TF B will follow 30 minutes after TF A. Brigade HQ will follow 30 minutes after TF B. TF C will follow 30 minutes after brigade HQ.
  - b. Tasks to Subordinate Units. The MPs will provide traffic control for the brigade movement.
  - c. Detailed Timings. None.
  - d. Coordinating Instructions.
    - (1) Start point (SP) NK 243567 at 011600 hours.
    - (2) Route Monroe command post (CP) is at NK 248560.
    - (3) Quartering party is the 25th Battalion.
    - (4) Vehicle markings are according to the unit SOP.
    - (5) Additional information, as required.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per the unit SOP.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI) are in effect.
    - (2) Visual signals according to the unit SOP.

**Figure 4-2. Movement Order**

4. General Situation.
  - a. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear, is being reinforced, and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM)

indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. This exercise is conducted under all environments during both day and night operations. The company is operating in an arid environment. The company will operate under threat of NBC attacks, ground or air attacks, indirect fire, and electronic warfare (EW).

c. This exercise is conducted under Threat Level I, II, or III attacks.

d. The company should be prepared to relocate at least every three to four days.

e. The unit should be prepared to move by echelons while continuing to provide support to the assigned area.

#### 5. Special Situation.

a. The lead TF encounters an unexpected obstacle that prevents bypass. Enemy contact has been made. The brigade commander gives the following fragmentary order (FRAGO):

“TF, conduct breaching operations and continue the attack.”

b. After completing the breaches, the TF receives fire from an enemy position and encounters complex obstacles that prevent bypass. The attack is stalled. The unit is ordered to move in.

#### 6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and Observers/Controllers. The battalion commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) who will be the trainer and the primary evaluator can conduct this task. At least one other observer/controller (O/C) is required for each engineer platoon and OPFOR platoon involved in this FTX.

##### b. Opposing Forces.

(1) OPFOR is required for the exercise to simulate Threat Level II and III activities.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) The Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) can be used, or the trainer and O/C can assess the damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. Each trainer and O/C needs a vehicle and a radio. Radios are also required for OPFOR vehicles during mounted operations.

d. Maneuver Area. Depending on the local training area, an area with a minimum dimension of 15 x 6 kilometers for the hasty attack is desirable. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow an evaluation of the unit ability to conduct a terrain analysis and to select an appropriate course of action.

e. Consolidated Support Requirements. Company support requirements can be calculated by adding the total of the requirements for each participating subordinate element. See Table 4-3.

**Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5-1-E0001**

<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (See the note below.)</b>			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>Class IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the FTX.</b>			

7. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that are used to evaluate the FTX.

**Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating FTX 5-1-E0001**

<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Task Number</b>
Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)	34-1-2005.05-T01A
Maintain Operations Security	71-2-0332.05-T01A
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)	05-1-0001
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	05-1-0500
Plan Breaching Operations	05-1-0520
Prepare for a Chemical Attack	3-2-C202.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	43-2-0001.05-T01A
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.05-T01A
Perform Field-Sanitation Measures	08-2-R315.05-T01A
Transport Casualties	08-2-C316.05-T01A
Provide Food-Service Support	10-2-0317.05-T01A
Provide Company Supply Support	10-2-0320.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Action	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Prepare an Engineer Annex	05-1-0003
Prepare an Operations Order	05-1-0008
Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	05-1-0027
Report Obstacle Information	05-1-0025
Report Engineer Information	05-1-0026
Analyze Battlefield Information	05-1-0415
Control Combined Arms Breaching	05-1-0048
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	05-2-1018
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	11-3-0214.05-T01A
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	11-5-0050.05-T01A
Establish External Communications	11-5-0121.05-T01A
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	11-5-1102.05-T01A
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	08-2-R303.05-T01A
Report Casualties	12-1-0403.05-T01A
Conduct Replacement Operations	12-1-0405.05-T01A

## CHAPTER 5

### Training and Evaluation Outlines

The T&EOs for the unit are listed in Figure 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

#### Develop Intelligence

Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection (05-1-0014).....	5-3
Identify Geospatial Support Requirements (05-1-6000).....	5-6
Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products (05-1-6002).....	5-8
Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-2-0005).....	5-10
Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-2-1013).....	5-13
Perform a Route Classification (05-3-0402.05-R01A).....	5-16
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A).....	5-19
Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A).....	5-21

#### Deploy/Conduct Maneuver

Fight as Engineers (05-1-0007).....	5-24
Reorganize as Infantry (05-1-0011).....	5-26
Plan Breaching Operations (05-1-1001).....	5-28
Fight as Infantry (05-1-3004).....	5-31
Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-1-3007).....	5-37
Report Obstacle Information (05-2-0015).....	5-40
React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A).....	5-43
Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A).....	5-45
Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A).....	5-50
Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A).....	5-53
React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A).....	5-57
Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A).....	5-59
Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (07-3-1135.05-T01A).....	5-62
Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A).....	5-64

#### Employ Firepower

Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS) (05-2-0100).....	5-67
--	------

#### Protect the Force

Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A).....	5-69
Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A).....	5-72
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A).....	5-74
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A).....	5-76
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A).....	5-78
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A).....	5-80
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A).....	5-82
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A).....	5-84
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A).....	5-86
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A).....	5-88
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A).....	5-90
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A).....	5-94
Direct Combat Road or Trail Construction (05-1-1002).....	5-96
Support a River Crossing Operation (05-1-1004).....	5-99
Emplace Situational Obstacles (05-1-2001).....	5-103
Direct Survivability Construction (05-1-3001).....	5-105
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-1-3002).....	5-107
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-1-3003).....	5-109

Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-1-3005).....	5-112
Establish Jobsite Security (05-1-3006).....	5-115
Plan for Survivability Operations (05-2-0508).....	5-118
Conduct Breaching Operations (05-2-1003).....	5-120
Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations (05-2-1005).....	5-123
Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles (05-2-2013).....	5-126
Control Construction of Survivability Positions (05-2-3000).....	5-129
Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210).....	5-131
Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield (05-3-2010).....	5-133
Emplace a Volcano Minefield (05-3-2011).....	5-136
Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A).....	5-139
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A).....	5-143
Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A).....	5-145
Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A).....	5-147
Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A).....	5-149
Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A).....	5-152
<b>Perform CSS and Sustainment</b>	
Manage Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)/Field Trains (05-1-0009).....	5-154
Perform Administrative Operations (05-1-7001).....	5-156
Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies (05-2-0042).....	5-159
Coordinate for Medical Services (05-2-0050).....	5-161
Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points (05-2-1068).....	5-163
Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-7000).....	5-165
Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A).....	5-167
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A).....	5-170
Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A).....	5-173
Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A).....	5-176
Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A).....	5-179
Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A).....	5-181
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A).....	5-183
Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A).....	5-185
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A).....	5-187
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A).....	5-189
<b>Exercise Command and Control</b>	
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (05-1-2000).....	5-193
Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company) (05-2-0002).....	5-196
Prepare an Engineer Annex (05-2-0003).....	5-200
Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Staff (05-2-0004).....	5-203
Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-0018).....	5-205
Establish a Command Post (CP) (05-2-0064).....	5-209
Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans (05-2-0314).....	5-211
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008).....	5-213
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A).....	5-215
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A).....	5-217
Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A).....	5-221
Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A).....	5-223

Figure 5-1. List of T&EO's

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection (05-1-0014)

(FM 5-170)	(FM 20-32)	(FM 3-34.2)
(FM 34-5)	(FM 5-100)	(FM 5-34)
(FM 5-410)	(FM 5-430-00-1)	(FM 5-430-00-2)
(FM 5-480)	(FM 55-20)	

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander and staff develop and implement an engineer intelligence plan to gather the essential elements of information (EEI) for subordinate and supporting elements to accomplish the mission successfully. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and staff develop the intelligence collection plan.  <b>NOTE: The digital units request Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) and All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) products from higher headquarters (HQ) to conduct reconnaissance and intelligence analysis.</b>                      a. Determined the priority intelligence requirements (PIR).  <b>NOTE: Normally, the PIR is in the form of a question, but it may be a statement.</b>                      b. Identified the detailed information required to answer the PIR, called essential elements of information (EEI), and was included but was not limited to the following:                      (1) Friendly engineer capabilities.                      (2) Enemy engineer capabilities.                      (3) Enemy conventional and scatterable-minefield locations.                      (4) Terrain.                      (5) Waterways or drainage.                      (6) Ports and harbors.                      (7) Roads, including military load classification (MLC).                      (8) Railways.                      (9) Trafficability.                      (10) Airfields.                      (11) Natural and man-made obstacles.                      (12) Contaminated areas.                      (13) Built-up areas.                      (14) Engineer resources.                      (15) Resources, such as electricity; gas; water; and petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL).                      c. Identified which units were to collect the information.                      (1) Designated maneuver units by placing the PIR and EEI in the maneuver operation order (OPORD).                      (2) Designated engineer units by placing the PIR and EEI in the engineer OPORD.</p> <p>2. The executive officer (XO) implements a collection plan.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Directed subordinate elements to do specific reconnaissances.</p> <p>b. Briefed the element leaders.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(1) Stated the reconnaissance objectives.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) Specified the area or route to reconnoiter.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(3) Provided a suggested method of reconnaissance.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(4) Presented any additional guidance from the commander, such as specific items to look for in a given area.</p> <p>c. Provided the units with forms and materials for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>d. Consolidated the information.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(1) Directed subordinate elements to forward the reconnaissance reports to the company operations section.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) Charged the company to collate and summarize the reconnaissance and intelligence reports (INTREPs).</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(3) Instructed the company to maintain the following files:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(a) Intelligence logs with all incoming and outgoing communications recorded on them.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(b) Engineer reconnaissance reports.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(c) Intelligence summaries (INTSUMs) and INTREPs.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(d) Engineer resource reports.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(e) Minefield records.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(f) Scatterable-minefield reports.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(g) Obstacle reports.</p> <p>e. Developed intelligence by extracting information pertinent to the PIR and EEI from the reconnaissance and intelligence reports.</p> <p>* 3. The commander completes or updates the situation analysis of the engineer estimate.</p> <p>* 4. The commander disseminates the intelligence to engineer, maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) units.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send intelligence information to subordinate units using the Maneuver Control System (MCS) and the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Identify Geospatial Support Requirements (05-1-6000)  
 (FM 34-130) (FM 34-2) (FM 34-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The staff section is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. Topographic support requirements are identified. The staff oversees the development and implementation of an engineer intelligence collection plan. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The staff identifies the need for standard and nonstandard geospatial support products that will support the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process. It satisfies questions raised in the priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and completes the intelligence annex to the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN) in the time outlined in the commander's guidance. The digital units send and receive reports and request Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The staff identifies the commander's intelligence requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received the commander's planning guidance and concept of operations after receiving the mission from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>b. Developed and prioritized the essential elements of information (EEI) and PIR.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed the PIR in the form of a question or statement.</li> <li>(2) Prepared the EEI to answer the PIR. The EEI included but was not limited to—                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Friendly engineer capabilities.</li> <li>(b) Enemy engineer capabilities.</li> <li>(c) Enemy conventional and scatterable minefield locations.</li> <li>(d) Contaminated areas.</li> <li>(e) Engineer resources.</li> <li>(f) Electricity, gas, water, petroleum, oils, and lubricant (POL) resources.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The following products are provided by the topographic element: terrain, waterways or drainage, ports and harbors, roads (including military load classification [MLC]), railroads, trafficability, airfields, natural and man-made obstacles, and built-up areas.</b></p> <p>2. The staff develops a collection plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the PIR.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reviewed the commander's guidance and intent.</li> <li>(2) Considered the current situation.</li> <li>(3) Considered the mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Identified the EEI needed to answer the PIR.</li> <li>c. Implemented the collection strategy.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assessed the current database.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units request DTSS products using digital capabilities according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
( a ) Reviewed the maps, charts, and imagery. ( b ) Checked the analysis, reports, and IPB products. (2) Requested products that answered the PIR questions and fulfilled the mission directives and the commander's intent in order to fill gaps in the database.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-2-0127	Provide Support for Survivability Operations
05-2-0514	Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles
05-2-0518	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
05-2-0600	Support a River Crossing Operation
05-2-1219	Conduct Combat Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products (05-1-6002)  
 (FM 5-33) (FM 34-130) (FM 34-2)  
 (FM 34-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. The staff requests a nonstandard geospatial product through higher headquarters (HQ). The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The staff issues a valid request and receives needed topographic products. The digital units send and receive reports or requests using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The staff determines the need for nonstandard geospatial products support. a. Based on mission directives and operation plans (OPLANs). b. Based on geographic areas of responsibility. c. Based on the availability of other geospatial products.  * 2. The staff coordinates the details of the project with the supporting topographic element. a. Ensured that the request was a valid task. b. Confirmed that the supporting topographic element had the capability to complete the task. c. Coordinated with the supporting geospatial element to review products at critical points. d. Established a priority for the project with a firm completion date.  * 3. The staff requests the necessary products. a. Submitted the request for products through the appropriate channels. b. Maintained a system to track, monitor, and follow-up on active support requests.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-2-0005)  
(FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a contemporary operating environment. The engineer company plans and directs an engineer reconnaissance of a designated area in support of the maneuver forces operations plan (OPLAN). The area is secure, but enemy contact is possible. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company plans and directs platoon reconnaissance missions to gather enough information to fulfill the reconnaissance objectives to support the maneuver forces plan. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The element commander plans the reconnaissance mission as defined in the battalion operation order (OPORD).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathered supporting intelligence data, such as map products and aerial photos.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units have access to Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) and All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) products to evaluate the plan and to assist in conducting the reconnaissance.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Established reconnaissance objectives, the main supply route (MSR), obstacle locations, general trafficability, decontamination points, and bivouac sites.</li> <li>c. Identified the subordinate element to perform the mission.</li> <li>d. Established the time, distance, and size of the zone or route to reconnoiter.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element commander determines a reconnaissance method.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a route reconnaissance when time was a critical factor.</li> <li>b. Selected a zone reconnaissance when cross-country trafficability was important.</li> <li>c. Selected an area reconnaissance when the mission required specific information about a defined area.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: An area reconnaissance is more thorough and time-consuming than a zone reconnaissance.</b></p> <p>* 3. The element commander briefs the subordinate element on the reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conveyed the objective of the reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Defined the area or route to cover.</li> <li>c. Described the methods of reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Directed a technical or tactical reconnaissance.</li> <li>e. Provided additional guidance (such as attention to fords, bridges, bivouac sites, and contaminated areas).</li> <li>f. Ensured that checkpoints were positioned for progress reports, assistance, and communications checks.</li> <li>g. Ensured that the reconnaissance element was briefed on time constraints and who, where, and when to submit the final report.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The element leader ensures that unit members have the minimum-essential materials needed to conduct the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that unit members had a map of the area, overlay paper, a compass, and a tape measure.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the reconnaissance team members had the appropriate reconnaissance forms.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the unit members had a secure mode of communications.</li> </ul> <p>5. The company operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) and section review the reconnaissance report.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the platoon accomplished the objective.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the members recorded the dimensions (in meters) on the overlay; for example, the road width, the bridges, the overhead clearance, constrictions to the travel way, the fords, the tunnels, or the underpasses.</li> <li>c. Ensured that members recorded and annotated critical terrain features and obstacles using the appropriate symbols on the overlay at their geographical location (such as, slopes, curves, fords, ferries, bridges, reduction in travel way, and constrictions).</li> <li>d. Ensured that the reconnaissance overlay was submitted through the appropriate channels according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and within the time constraints.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The company operations NCO updates the company terrain analysis and overlay. He prepares to brief the commander on the results of the reconnaissance mission.</p> <p>* 7. The company commander briefs the battalion commander and staff on the mission. He submits all reports to the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) within the time constraints.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units can submit reports using digital means to assist the commander in the decision-making process. The appropriate DA forms are submitted at a later time according to the standardization agreement (STANAG) and the unit SOP.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0410	Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations
05-2-0413	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-3-0405	Perform a Target Reconnaissance
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance (05-2-1013)  
 (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34) (FM 90-13)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is in a contemporary operating environment. The company receives an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a water crossing site reconnaissance. Personnel and equipment are available. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. All necessary equipment is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element performs the reconnaissance and identifies all missions that are required to support the operation within the time specified in the OPORD. Locations are accurate to within 10 meters. Measurements and dimensions are accurate within plus or minus 10 percent. The digital units send and receive information using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader plans the site reconnaissance.  <b>NOTE: The digital units request Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products to assist in the conduct of the initial reconnaissance.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a map reconnaissance of the site (digital or analog).</li> <li>b. Selected routes for movement to and from the site.</li> <li>c. Selected rally points.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader issues the OPORD.  <b>NOTE: The digital units can provide the OPORD using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System. The unit can send and receive reports using digital systems according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned responsibilities and designated far- and near-bank reconnaissance teams.</li> <li>b. Designated the movement methods and routes to and from the site.</li> <li>c. Described the action to take in the event of enemy contact.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element leader directs the movement to the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the team dismounted before arriving at the site, as required by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the team displaced tactically.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader observes and records access route conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recorded overhead obstructions with clearances of less than 4.3 meters.</li> <li>b. Recorded reductions in the travel way width that were less than 8 meters.</li> <li>c. Recorded gradients (slopes) of 7 percent or greater.</li> <li>d. Recorded curves having a radius of 25 meters or less.</li> <li>e. Recorded road surface conditions.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Recorded obstacles, such as road craters, mined areas, felled trees, or rubble.</p> <p>5. The far-bank team performs a far-bank reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Determined the condition of various points identified during the map reconnaissance to include—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Bank heights.</li> <li>(2) Bank slopes.</li> <li>(3) Soil conditions.</li> <li>(4) Bank obstacles (natural or man-made).</li> </ol> <p>b. Estimated the gap width at the site.</p> <p>c. Determined the gap (wet) conditions in the vicinity of the crossing site, to include—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) River depth at 3-meter intervals along the site.</li> <li>(2) Sandbars or other water obstacles.</li> <li>(3) Bottom conditions.</li> <li>(4) Fluctuations in the current of the river.</li> </ol> <p>d. Collected any other information requested in the OPORD.</p> <p>e. Returned to the rally point designated by the reconnaissance element leader.</p> <p>6. The near-bank team performs a near-bank reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Determined the condition of the near bank along various points. See performance measure 5a.</p> <p>b. Estimated the gap width (wet) at the site.</p> <p>c. Measured the current velocity at the site.</p> <p>d. Collected any other information requested in the OPORD.</p> <p>e. Returned to the designated rally point.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader receives the reconnaissance information from the team leader.</p> <p>a. Ensured that all the required information was obtained.</p> <p>b. Disseminated the information to the team members.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader directs the movement from the site.</p> <p>a. Ensured that the team displaced tactically.</p> <p>b. Directed the movement to subsequent sites as required by the OPORD. Repeated performance measures 2 through 7 until the mission was completed.</p> <p>c. Directed the return to the squad assembly area (AA).</p> <p>* 9. The element leader submits his report to the command element.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send and receive reports using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), providing updated situational awareness (SA).</b></p> <p>a. Provided a sketch of each site, to include the—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Bank heights and slopes.</li> <li>(2) River-bottom profile.</li> <li>(3) Estimated river width.</li> </ol> <p>b. Provided other information including the—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Current velocity.</li> <li>(2) Soil conditions.</li> <li>(3) Route conditions leading to and from the site.</li> <li>(4) Obstacles.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves
052-196-2004	Determine Stream Velocity

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
19-1-2203	Direct Site Security Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Obstacle Section  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Perform a Route Classification (05-3-0402.05-R01A)  
 (FM 5-170) (DA FORM 1248) (DA FORM 1249)  
 (DA FORM 1250) (DA FORM 1251) (DA FORM 1252)  
 (DA FORM 1711-R) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 5-34)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a contemporary operating environment, and receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a route reconnaissance over a specified route. All organic tools and equipment are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element uses the correct symbols to prepare and submit an overlay identifying the obstacles. Digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Obstructions, terrain features, critical points, and route conditions will be reported. The locations are accurate to within 10 meters. The measurements, dimensions, and classifications are accurate to within 10 percent. The element completes the reconnaissance within the time specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader received a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a route reconnaissance.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units have the ability to conduct steps a through c by using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or the task force (TF) engineer for ground security forces or aviation security forces.</li> <li>b. Requested an enemy situation brief from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), release points (RPs), route, and terrain.</li> <li>d. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Ensured that the reconnaissance mission met the commander's intent and requirements; for example, the route classification, double-flow traffic, obstructions, barriers, and bypasses.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader prepares an overlay of the specified route.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units obtain Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products and use the ABCS to prepare and review digital overlays.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the route was to scale on the overlay and showed the limit of sector symbols (one each at the start and end points).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Plotted at least two grid reference points and a grid or a magnetic north arrow.</p> <p>c. Prepared the title block with the following information:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The route classification formula.</li> <li>(2) The name, rank, and social security number (SSN) of the person in charge of performing the classification.</li> <li>(3) The unit conducting the classification.</li> <li>(4) The date-time group (DTG).</li> <li>(5) The map name, edition, and scale.</li> <li>(6) Any remarks necessary to ensure complete understanding of the information on the overlay.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: See references for more detailed information.</b></p> <p>d. Ensured that digitally capable units submitted reports electronically and followed up with a hard copy.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader briefs the subunit leaders on the reconnaissance mission.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the five-paragraph order format to include—             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The route to reconnoiter.</li> <li>(2) The method of reconnaissance, which was either the hasty method or the deliberate method.</li> <li>(3) The reconnaissance objectives; for example, the obstacle location, trafficability, and water points.</li> <li>(4) Radio communications for the progress report, requests for assistance, and communications check.</li> <li>(5) The actions that the security team and the squad members took upon enemy contact.</li> <li>(6) Time and distance factors.</li> <li>(7) Noise and light discipline.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Planned for a double flow of tracked vehicles unless otherwise directed by the commander.</li> <li>c. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>d. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>e. Drew the required equipment, forms, and material for reconnaissance, ensuring that the required forms were available.</li> </ol> <p>4. The element reconnoiters the specific route, measuring and recording information along the route.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the travel way width for trafficability.</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: Single-flow wheeled traffic is 5.5 to 7.3 meters wide and single-flow tracked traffic is 6 to 8 meters wide. Double-flow wheeled traffic is 7.3 meters wide and double-flow tracked traffic is 8 meters wide. In the absence of any guidance, the element reconnoiters for double-flow tracked traffic.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Determined the route type (X, Y, or Z).</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: X = all weather, Y = limited all weather, Z = fair-weather route.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Determined the military load classification (MLC). The element classified the entire route according to the lowest load classification of any section of the route.</li> <li>d. Identified the underwater structures that were not sound or capable of holding the desired MLC.</li> <li>e. Recorded on the overlay the terrain features that were seen along the route; for example, fords, ferries, bridges, slopes, curves, constrictions, man-made obstacles, and overhead clearance.</li> <li>f. Identified, for a detailed explanation on the engineer reconnaissance report, any of the critical points spotted on the route; for example, terrain features or obstacles. See the appropriate reference.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Recorded all the measurements (in meters) on the engineer reconnaissance report.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader with the entire reconnaissance team is debriefed by the S3, S2, or the TF engineer and turns over the required reconnaissance forms and completed overlays. The unit TACSOP or SOP will determine the requirements for the debriefing and who is required to attend.</p> <p>a. Completed the overlay with all the appropriate symbols recorded at their geographical location.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the route classification formula was present and located over the title block.</p> <p>c. Filled out the form(s) as required by the commander.</p> <p>d. Recorded the measurements on the overlay in meters.</p> <p>6. The element leader briefed the commander, the S2, the S3, or the TF engineer on the reconnaissance mission and then submitted the overlays, reports, and the engineer reconnaissance report to the commander within the prescribed time on the OPORD.</p> <p>a. Provided the required reconnaissance forms to the commander within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD.</p> <p>b. Provided the required overlays to the commander within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units submit digital reports or hard copy (Department of the Army [DA] forms) according to the appropriate standardization agreement (STANAG) and the unit TACSOP.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0412	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance
05-2-0410	Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, and radios.</li> <li>b. Annotated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture.</li> <li>d. Noted the capturing unit.</li> <li>e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag if the items were taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader reports the capture of equipment and documents to higher HQ.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Described the type of equipment and documents.</li> <li>b. Stated the date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Identified the capturing unit.</li> <li>d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment.</li> <li>b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)  
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 24-33)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-19.30)  
 (FM 34-60)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance elements. The element can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising the elements main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders check or perform information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians.</li> <li>c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection.</li> <li>d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information.</li> <li>e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs.</li> <li>f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element performs camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concealed and camouflaged with natural materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground or air observation.</li> <li>b. Moved on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick.</li> <li>d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit position.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged earth berms.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were erected.</li> <li>d. Evaded crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions.                      f. Ensured that vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted.                      g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage.                      h. Evaded movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</p> <p>4. The element employs the company net control station (NCS) and enforces communications security (COMSEC).                      a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) procedures, such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. Ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy.                      b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures.                      c. Followed COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence.                      d. Followed procedures for operations during jamming.                      e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service.                      f. Used visual signals according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>5. The element employs physical security measures.                      a. Employed observation posts (OPs).                      b. Employed counterreconnaissance patrols.                      c. Followed stand-to procedures.                      d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted.                      e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire.                      f. Used the challenge and password.                      g. Limited access into the area of the unit.                      h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.                      i. Picked up litter.                      j. Employed air guards.</p> <p>* 6. All leaders enforce noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Fight as Engineers (05-1-0007)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-100-15)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. The commanding general directs the battalion to fight as engineers. The digital units have performed functionality checks and the systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** According to the battalion standing operating procedure (SOP), the engineer battalion reorganizes as an engineer or infantry battalion within the required period of time. All equipment and personnel not used in this role are moved to an equipment park or are attached to another unit. The reorganized battalion receives augmentation from air defense, fire support, antitank units, and a medical element, if available. The digital units send and receive information using frequency-modulated (FM) and digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The battalion commander decides who will be the unit fire support officer (FSO).  <b>NOTE: The digital units use the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to perform collaborative planning and send and receive orders, reports, and requests according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <p>2. The FSO makes immediate coordination for air defense artillery, artillery support, and other necessary support for the unit.</p> <p>3. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) updates the status of personnel and requests personnel to bring the battalion to its authorized strength, if required.</p> <p>4. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) organizes scout elements from organic assets to accomplish the assigned missions, if necessary.</p> <p>5. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) prepares for infantry type missions.</p> <p>    a. Requested any support that the FSO needed; for example, air defense artillery, mortars, field artillery, and antitank elements.</p> <p>    b. Initiated an estimation process for infantry type missions.</p> <p>    c. Designated the company assembly areas (AAs).</p> <p>6. The Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) prepares field and combat trains.</p> <p>    a. Organized a support platoon consisting of all fuel, ammunition, and cargo-hauling assets to support any additional needs of the line company.</p> <p>    b. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnarounds. Camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Requested additional Class V (ammunition) that was required by organic weapons and antitank systems, as necessary. d. Consolidated unit mess and maintenance assets under the control of the battalions in the field trains. e. Designated the location of the engineer equipment park and the controlling team chief, if necessary. (1) Established the equipment park in a covered and concealed position. (2) Established the equipment park on defensible terrain.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0606	Establish and Operate a Unit Maintenance Collection Point (UMCP)
05-1-1035	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-1126	Coordinate for Organizational Maintenance Support
05-2-1219	Conduct Combat Operations
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Reorganize as Infantry (05-1-0011)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, the battalion commander directs the unit to reorganize as an infantry. A time schedule is provided. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and the systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company reorganizes into combat trains and combat elements. The company is prepared to conduct infantry operations within the specified time requirements. The digital units can send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander initiates a reorganization.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a warning order (WO) and conducted troop-leading procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Developed a tentative plan based on the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) while the subordinate units prepared for infantry operations.</li> <li>(2) Conducted a reconnaissance in order to complete the plan and verbally issued the completed order in a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) format.</li> <li>(3) Conducted the appropriate equipment and troop inspections.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Evaluated the status of the ongoing engineer missions and issued instructions for the termination of those missions.</li> <li>c. Organized the company into two elements (combat and combat trains), designated the composition of each element, and determined the assembly location and time for each element.</li> <li>d. Assigned command and control (C2) responsibilities for each combat element.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander organizes the combat elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Retained the existing organizational structure of the engineer platoon as the basic fighting element.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Platoons are configured internally according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Coordinated with battalion personnel for augmentation from maneuver and fire support elements.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans to incorporate them into the combat element, and determined their missions.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the command and support relationships and the combat service support (CSS) requirements and procedures.</li> <li>e. Assembled the combat element in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the designated time.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 3. The company commander organizes the combat trains element.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the battalion for augmentation from combat support elements.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the augmentation forces, prepared plans, incorporated them into the combat trains, and determined the—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Missions of the augmentation forces.</li> <li>(2) C2 procedures.</li> <li>(3) CSS requirements and procedures.</li> <li>(4) Requirements for additional Class V supplies required for organic weapons and augmenting mortars, including antitank systems.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Set up material storage areas containing vehicle turnaround areas and camouflaged the areas according to the tactical situation.</li> <li>d. Determined the disposition of engineer equipment and operators.</li> <li>e. Assembled combat trains elements in the required configuration, at the correct location, and within the time designated by the commander.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The company commander designates the composition of combat and combat trains elements.</p> <p>* 5. The company commander reports that the unit is prepared to receive infantry missions.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-1068	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points
05-2-1215	Fight as Infantry
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section

**TASK:** Plan Breaching Operations (05-1-1001)  
 (FM 3-34.2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The maneuver brigade is operating in a contemporary operating environment. Scouts and lead elements of the brigade encounter enemy obstacles and in-stride breach efforts have failed which requires a brigade deliberate breach. The digital elements have performed functionality checks, and the systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer battalion staff plans breaching operations according to the commander's intent to allow for the projection of combat power and follow-on troops across the complex obstacle. The digital elements send and receive reports and orders using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and staff receive the mission.  <b>NOTE: The digital elements perform collaborative planning and send and receive reports digitally according to the element standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <p>* 2. The commander and staff use detailed reverse planning to perform the engineer estimates.  <b>NOTE: During a brigade deliberate breach, normally several lanes need to be opened simultaneously through the obstacle to facilitate passage of assault forces. The number of lanes required is driven by the actions on the objective (size of assault force). The operation may also require reducing several obstacles at various locations throughout the area of operation (AO), either simultaneously or in succession. The digital elements populate the Maneuver Control System (MCS) and the Force XXI Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the breach locations and lanes.</b></p> <p>* 3. The brigade engineer and staff perform an engineer battlefield assessment (EBA).                      a. Included the following information in the EBA:                          (1) The terrain analysis.                          (2) The enemy mission and the mobility/survivability (M/S) capabilities that use intelligence information.                          (3) Friendly mission and M/S capabilities.                      b. Integrated engineer reconnaissance teams into the brigade reconnaissance and surveillance (R&amp;S) plan and effort.                      c. Validated the enemy template and obstacle intelligence (OBSTINTEL) using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS) and updated as needed.                      d. Developed the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO) throughout the depth of the attack.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Determined the anticipated mobility requirements of all aspects (support, assault, and breach forces) of the breaching element.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Prioritized requirements.</li> <li>(2) Task organized the reduction assets against these priorities.</li> </ol> <p>f. Analyzed the terrain using the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) and the MCS to assist the brigade staff in selecting the—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Support by fire/attack by fire (SBF/ABF) positions.</li> <li>(2) Reduction sites.</li> <li>(3) Observation posts (OPs) for the reconnaissance.</li> <li>(4) Observation locations.</li> <li>(5) Routes or avenues of approach.</li> <li>(6) Scatterable mine (SCATMINE) targets.</li> </ol> <p>4. The assistant brigade engineer (ABE), engineer Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3), and the brigade S2 merge the engineer and command estimates.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined OBSTINTEL requirements.</li> <li>b. Recommended the priority intelligence requirements (PIR).</li> </ol> <p>5. The brigade engineer and staff war-game the breach with the brigade staff. Determined the—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Timing and intent of the fire support (FS) for the breaching force.</li> <li>b. Point of penetrations (POP).</li> <li>c. Critical friendly zones (CFZs).</li> <li>d. Phased timeline of the breach, to include movement to the obstacle and timing of all suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and attack (SOSRA) forces.</li> <li>e. Intelligence electronic warfare probabilities and abilities.</li> <li>f. Air defense artillery (ADA) coverage.</li> <li>g. Indirect fire support coverage.</li> <li>h. Smoke support requirements to obscure the breach locations.</li> <li>i. Close air support (CAS) availability and timing.</li> <li>j. Control measures to perform the breaching operation, to include the responsibilities of the support, breach, and assault forces.</li> <li>k. Additional support requirements from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>l. Forward passage of lines (FPOL) of the follow-on forces.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. The brigade engineer and staff, with the brigade staff, determine the course of action (COA) using the reverse-planning process, to include task organization of the support, breach, and assault forces; the routes and assault positions; the quantity and spacing of the lanes; the command and control (C2); the maneuver and fire-control measures; and the follow-on forces actions.</p> <p>* 7. The engineer commander and staff create and publish orders.</p> <p>* 8. The brigade engineer and staff, with the brigade staff, brief the order and supervise the conduct of combined arms rehearsals.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included possible counterattacks (CATKs).</li> <li>b. Included enemy indirect fire.</li> <li>c. Included nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attacks.</li> <li>d. Included situational obstacles.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-3060	Conduct a Breach of a Minefield
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations
052-194-4007	Execute a Complex Obstacle Breach

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan
05-3-1239	Plan and Control Indirect Fire
05-6-0125	Plan Engineer Mobility Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Fight as Infantry (05-1-3004)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, an element has received an operation order (OPORD) to reorganize as an infantry and is preparing to engage in combat operations. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element organizes the platoons for combat and conducts defensive or retrograde operations according to higher headquarters (HQ) directives. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means and provide an updated common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander conducts troop-leading procedures after receiving the OPORD to fight as an infantry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the mission and planned the use of any available time following the 1/3- to 2/3-time rule.</li> <li>b. Issued a warning order (WO) and ensured that all of the leaders were kept informed of their duties.</li> <li>c. Consulted with the leaders and made tentative plans.</li> <li>d. Initiated the necessary movement to prepare the subordinate units for the upcoming mission and to incorporate them into the upcoming mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The company commander uses fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to initiate these actions.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Reconnoitered the area of operations (AO).</li> <li>f. Incorporated any additional details concerning the operation (following a reconnaissance mission) and completed the plan.</li> <li>g. Supervised the preparation for and the execution of the mission.</li> <li>h. Issued the order for the mission in verbal or written form.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The company commander orders the company to conduct defensive operations.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander posts security elements to provide local security.</p> <p>4. The company identifies elements of the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the key terrain.</li> <li>b. Identified the likely avenue of approach.</li> <li>c. Identified the location of the company battle position (BP), the company target reference points (TRPs), and the engagement area (EA).</li> <li>d. Determined the limits of the company BP and the company or team sectors of fire.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Determined the artillery preplotted targets.</li> <li>f. Determined the primary and supplementary firing positions that—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enabled the company to deliver effective fire, on TRPs and EA, at optimal ranges.</li> <li>(2) Provided long-range observation and interlocking fire between the adjacent units.</li> <li>(3) Provided a line of sight to other company or team BPs to provide mutually supporting fire.</li> <li>(4) Provided cover and concealment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>g. Covered and concealed the routes between the primary and supplementary firing positions.</li> <li>h. Covered and concealed the routes into and out of the primary BP to subsequent BPs.</li> <li>i. Identified the locations for observation posts (OPs) to provide observation of the platoon sector of fire.</li> <li>j. Identified the location of existing obstacles and the positions for reinforcing the obstacles.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The company commander develops a rough draft of a company or team fire plan.</p> <p>* 6. The company commander returns to the assembly area (AA) or moves the company to the rear of the BP, meets with the subordinate leaders, and issues an OPORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP using the rough draft of the fire plan or a terrain model as a guide (in the AA).</li> <li>b. Issued an OPORD for occupying the BP from a vantage point using the rough draft of the fire plan as a guide (in the BP).</li> </ul> <p>7. The company or team moves to the rear and flanks of the assigned BP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved to a hidden position at the rear of the BP and executed actions-at-the-halt.</li> <li>b. Manned the OPs of the company.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The company or team commander issues a five-paragraph oral OPORD from a vantage point using the rough sketch of the fire plan.</p> <p>* 9. The platoon leaders return to their units and use hand-and-arm signals to have the drivers start their engines.</p> <p>*10. The company or team commander issues orders for occupying the BP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ordered the platoon leader to position the vehicles, without leaving tracks, in fighting positions that were difficult for the enemy to detect.</li> <li>b. Checked the consolidated range cards and sketches of the platoon fire plans to ensure that there were no weak points between the platoon or flank companies.</li> <li>c. Finalized the fire plan in relation to the terrain to ensure that the EA was set on the enemy avenue of approach, covered by mutually supporting interlocking fire from platoons, and located between flank companies.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the flank companies to ensure coverage.</li> <li>e. Forwarded the company fire plan to the battalion task force (TF) commander for a final check of mutually supporting interlocking fire covering the EA.</li> <li>f. Received reports from the platoon leaders regarding established platoon BPs and reported the information to the battalion TF.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The reports are submitted within the defend-by time stated in the OPORD. The defend-by time is a calculated estimate of when the enemy may attack. The enemy may attack before or after this time.</b></p> <p>g. Referred to the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors, and ordered the platoons to continue to improve their BP.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Do the most critical tasks first in case the enemy attacks before the defend-by time.</b></p> <p>*11. The company or team commander performs tactical planning and, based on the factors of the METT-TC, plans for a deliberate or hasty occupation of a BP in a built-up area.</p> <p>a. Conducted a reconnaissance of the BP and analyzed the threat force method of attacking a built-up area.</p> <p>b. Analyzed the BP. Identified the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The location of the checkpoints, phase lines, and building numbers according to the OPORD or FRAGO.</li> <li>(2) The observation sites and fields of fire on the enemy avenue of approach.</li> <li>(3) The primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions on the perimeter of the built-up area.</li> <li>(4) The positions that would provide cover and concealment.</li> <li>(5) The location of the OPs that would provide a 360-degree security for a three-dimensional battlefield.</li> <li>(6) The covered and concealed routes into and out of the firing positions and the BPs that could not be blocked by a blow down from structures.</li> <li>(7) The location of obstacles (existing and reinforcing), buildings with basements, fire hazards, sewers, viaducts, or bridges.</li> <li>(8) The structures that dominated the built-up area.</li> <li>(9) The locations of the firing positions, in depth, throughout the built-up area.</li> <li>(10) The areas to integrate the dismounted infantry into the company or team defense.</li> </ol> <p>c. Coordinated with adjacent units for dismounted support, as necessary, and ensured that the units were tied in with the company or the team forces.</p> <p>d. Upgraded the hasty defense and improved the BP, as time permitted.</p> <p>e. Planned for indirect fire in the EA and along the possible avenue of approach in front of and behind obstacles.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The fire support team (FIST) plans the smoke.</b></p> <p>*12. The company or team commander develops a company or team fire plan.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a fire plan as part of a hasty or deliberate BP occupation.</li> <li>b. Located the platoons and oriented the company or team.</li> <li>c. Developed a fire plan that included the company or team sector, the platoon and OP positions, obstacles, indirect-fire targets, and final protection fire (FPF), if allocated.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the fire plans of the platoon were received in a timely manner. Made an updated copy of the company or team fire plan for the executive officer (XO) and the platoon leaders, as time permitted.</li> <li>e. Verified the plan by conducting rehearsals for counterattack missions based on METT-TC factors.</li> <li>f. Upgraded the fire plan, to include the fire plans for the platoon supplementary firing positions.</li> <li>g. Forwarded a copy of the fire plan to higher HQ.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: Check the complete direct- and indirect-fire plan as if you are the enemy attacking the position. Look for weak points in the defense and make corrections.</b></p> <p>*13. The company or team commander and the platoon leaders organize the EA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoitered the EA (physically), covering as many options as possible to mass fire. Included the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The enemy avenue of approach.</li> <li>(2) The locations of existing and reinforcing obstacles.</li> <li>(3) The key terrain.</li> <li>(4) The TRPs.</li> <li>(5) The artillery preplots.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Organized the EA to mass direct and indirect fire.</li> <li>c. Organized the fire in the EA, 800 to 2,000 meters from the defending company or team, based on METT-TC factors.</li> <li>d. Used fire to interlock.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The platoons and the company or team mutually support each other with direct fire.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Positioned the company or team around the EA.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: One company or platoon is centered in the EAs and one is positioned on both the right and left flanks.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Ensured that the TRPs were marked for easy reference. Used the existing terrain, when possible.</li> <li>g. Shifted platoons or firing positions to cover the dead space and weak points.</li> <li>h. Developed an obstacle plan that—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Tied obstacles into the existing terrain features.</li> <li>(2) Slowed the enemy movement.</li> <li>(3) Concealed obstacles from the enemy.</li> <li>(4) Positioned obstacles on the enemy main avenue of approach.</li> <li>(5) Covered obstacles by directing artillery to the front and rear.</li> <li>(6) Placed obstacles in the EA so that the personnel in the rear and on the flanks could fire simultaneously into the front of the enemy regiment, using direct and indirect massed fire. Repositioned personnel who were stopped in front of the obstacles.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>*14. The company or team commander is briefed by platoon leaders on the EAs in each sector and on any changes made to the origin.</p> <p>*15. The company or team commander executes the company defensive mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Acknowledged the report or mission from the battalion TF commander.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the spot report (SPOTREP) or the mission using METT-TC factors. Determined the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The size of the enemy force.</li> <li>(2) The location of the force in relation to the company or team position.</li> <li>(3) The direction of enemy movement.</li> <li>(4) The avenue(s) of approach that the enemy could use to enter the company, team sector, or battalion TF EA.</li> <li>(5) The arrival time of the enemy at the company or team trigger point.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Alerted the OPs with a SPOTREP, which included all information given by the battalion TF commander and any additional information.</li> <li>d. Directed the company or team to remain in hidden positions until the OP identified the source of smoke dust columns or sounds.</li> <li>e. Ordered the company or team and platoons to immediately prepare to engage the enemy.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Received SPOTREPs from platoon leaders.  g. Reported to the battalion TF commander.  h. Controlled the indirect fire on the enemy as they advanced.  <b>NOTE: This step may also be performed by the FIST.</b>  i. Ordered the platoons into hull-down positions, gave the order to fire, and returned the platoons to the hull-down position after the enemy was destroyed.</p> <p>*16. The company or team commander receives SPOTREPs from the platoon leaders containing the number and types of vehicles that reached the company or team breaking point, if the enemy elements are too strong.  <b>NOTE: The SPOTREP may also contain orders from the battalion TF commander to displace to a subsequent BP.</b>  a. Requested FPF, if scheduled.  b. Took direction from the battalion TF commander on whether to continue the mission or displace.  <b>NOTE: If the battalion TF gave no guidance, the company commander or team commander coordinates with the flank company or teams and then displaces. The company or team commander must coordinate with the flank company or teams so that they are not flanked by the enemy.</b></p> <p>*17. The company or team commander receives a FRAGO from the TF commander ordering a counterattack.  a. Conducted prep-to-fire checks.  b. Checked the weapon systems for proper loading.</p> <p>*18. The company or team commander coordinates with the platoon leaders regarding continuing the mission.</p> <p>*19. The company or team commander monitors the mission.  a. Determined the size, the type, and the location of enemy elements.  b. Identified the locations of enemy or friendly mines and obstacles.  c. Determined the most covered and concealed routes for the company or team to assault the flanks of the enemy without masking the fire of supporting elements.</p> <p>*20. The counterattack company or team commander coordinates the counterattack route with the defending company or teams (if deviating from the OPORD route).</p> <p>*21. The defending company or team commanders alert their platoons that the counterattacking force is going to attack the enemy from the right or left flank or from the rear.</p> <p>*22. The defending company or team commanders remind their defending platoon leaders of the restrictive-fire line (RFL) and to control the direct fire.</p> <p>23. The counterattacking company or team stays outside of or on the far side of the RFL.</p> <p>*24. The company or team commander receives the order to counterattack.  a. Ordered the company or team to begin the counterattack along the identified routes.  b. Ordered the company or team to a position from which it could engage the flank or rear of the enemy (for counterattack by fire).  c. Ordered the company or team to move rapidly to the flank or rear position of the trail battalions of the enemy and close in on them firing at high speed (for counterattack by fire and maneuver).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The tanks, if available, lead and destroy the enemy tanks. The armored personnel carriers (APCs) follow and destroy light vehicles and the dismounted infantry.</b></p> <p>*25. The defending company or team commanders control the fire behind the RFL.</p> <p>26. The defending companies of the battalion TF continue to fire upon the enemy and halt the enemy elements that advance from the front.</p> <p>27. The company or team conducts consolidation and reorganization activities to continue the mission.</p> <p>*28. The company or team commander reports to the higher HQ according to the field standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send reports and unit locations and update the COP to provide SA to the units operating in the area.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1000	Conduct Logistics Operations
05-2-1200	Reorganize as Infantry
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-1-3007)  
 (FM 3-90.1) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-10) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, a unit is directed to move to a new location and establish an assembly area (AA). The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party departs ahead of the main body of the unit and completes all tasks in the new AA before the main body arrives. The unit moves all personnel and equipment to the assigned position within the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader organizes the quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).</li> <li>b. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit.</li> <li>c. Selected subordinate-element representatives according to the unit standing operate procedure (SOP).</li> <li>d. Organized a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance party from the NCOIC, the security element, and the subordinate-element representatives to satisfy the threat conditions.</li> <li>e. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>g. Reviewed the unit SOP and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>h. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the unit SOP or TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The quartering party conducts rehearsals on minesweeping operations, actions on contact for the security teams, and movement guide procedures. Conducted a rehearsal using one of the following rehearsal types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The confirmation brief.</li> <li>b. The back brief.</li> <li>c. The combined arms.</li> <li>d. The battle drill.</li> <li>e. The SOP.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The quartering party leader conducts a map reconnaissance identifying the start point (SP), potential ambush sites, checkpoints (CPs), rest stops, and AA.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The route used by the quartering party can be the same as the route used by the main body of the unit, as long as security is maintained along the route. If security is not maintained, the main body should conduct a route clearance to the new AA.</b></p> <p>4. The quartering party prepares the vehicles for the convoy.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>b. Loaded vehicles according to the load plan.</li> <li>c. Prepared troop-carrying vehicles for combat survivability by covering the floors with a double layer of sandbags or Kevlar blankets.</li> <li>d. Maintained a guard force to prevent theft and sabotage.</li> </ol> <p>* 5. The quartering party leader briefs convoy personnel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the convoy route, to include the medical- and maintenance-support locations and the destination.</li> <li>b. Provided a strip map to each vehicle commander (or driver).</li> </ol> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units input routes and checkpoints into the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System by using an overlay message and/or a long format message according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Briefed the prescribed march rate, the catch-up speed, and the distance between the vehicles.</li> <li>d. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>e. Briefed limited-visibility movement procedures.</li> <li>f. Briefed the chain of command and radio frequency.</li> </ol> <p>6. The quartering party relocates to the new AA.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Traveled separately from, and ahead of, the main body.</li> <li>b. Reported route limitations and other specified command interest items to the next higher element.</li> </ol> <p>7. The quartering party reconnoiters the area and notifies the commander of the conditions.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units update the enemy locations, mined areas, and NBC contaminated areas on the FBCB2 System to update the situational awareness (SA) and common operational picture (COP).</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the position of enemy forces.</li> <li>b. Located the areas containing mines, booby traps, and NBC contamination.</li> <li>c. Evaluated terrain conditions, to include trafficability, cover and concealment, and the availability of adequate routes into and out of the AA.</li> <li>d. Evaluated the communication system required for the AA.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The quartering party leader notifies the commander of the condition of the area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received orders and prepared the area for the main body (satisfactory conditions).</li> <li>b. Requested additional instructions from the next higher commander and moved to the alternate AA or found another location and repeated step 7 (unsatisfactory conditions).</li> </ol> <p>9. The quartering party prepares the area to receive the main body.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured the area.</li> <li>b. Marked or removed any obstacles and mines.</li> <li>c. Organized the area, divided it into sectors for each unit, and selected locations for the command post.</li> <li>d. Improved and marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>e. Marked vehicle positions.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
10. Each element representative from the quartering party guides his element, without delay, from the release point (RP) to the sector of that element of the AA (mounted, if possible).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Report Obstacle Information (05-2-0015)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a contemporary operating environment. The element reports and/or receives obstacle and scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) information. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) and subordinate units have accurate and timely information on obstacles in the area of operation (AO). The location of obstacles are reported and/or submitted through frequency-modulated (FM) means or the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to update the common operational picture (COP), the situational awareness (SA), and obstacle overlays. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The element reports obstacle information that is required by the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).  <b>NOTE: The digital units can send reports and update the digital overlay to provide the current SA.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported and/or received a status report and obstacle document (OBSDOC), that gave the serial number, type, location (8-digit coordinate), progress, completion date of obstacles, and the date and time the report was generated.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Proper authorization for emplacement of obstacles must be obtained.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Received a SCATMINE record or a SCATMINE warning report.</li> <li>c. Received a map sheet(s).</li> <li>d. Received information on the enemy situation.</li> <li>e. Received additional assets or required equipment.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Notify the supply section and the engineer elements of the type and quantity of assets or equipment required.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Reported and/or recorded obstacle information (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</li> <li>g. Reported information on the obstacle hand-off (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).</li> </ul> <p>2. The element reports obstacle information to the supported unit and the higher engineer command.</p> <p>* 3. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) reports to the commander on the type of obstacles; the unit responsible for emplacement, progress, completion date, hand-off, and execution of the obstacles; the enemy situation; and the execution and plotting of the commander's guidance on SCATMINES.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 4. The OIC or the NCOIC briefs the team on the type, serial number, location, emplacement progress, and possible hand-off of obstacles; the relocation of material; the emplacement and execution of SCATMINES; and the unit and/or location of tasked elements, if assistance is required.</p> <p>* 5. The OIC or the NCOIC reports to the supported or parent unit (based on command or support relationship) on the requirements for material, equipment, recovery vehicles, maintenance support, obstacle material, communications equipment, mission location, map sheet(s), and engineer elements needing assistance.</p> <p>6. The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) records obstacle information from the subordinate elements and the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated the SA and obstacle overlays with team locations; emplaced, executed, and handed off obstacles; intended and executed SCATMINE targets; and encountered obstacle locations.</li> <li>b. Maintained an accurate status of emplaced, executed, handed off, and encountered obstacles, and intended and executed SCATMINE targets, by maintaining an updated and current digital SA OBSDOC.</li> <li>c. Maintained files of reports sent.</li> <li>d. Coordinated with the battalion S3 to provide updates on the status of obstacles emplaced by the subordinate elements of the company, obstacle execution, SCATMINES, obstacle enhancement, and any required assistance.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The element leader briefs the supported commander or higher engineer command on SCATMINES, reserve targets, and other obstacles, to include their status, location, self-destruct times, dimensions, delivery means, and hand-off.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Platoon)

ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert, "Incoming!" or a round impacts on or near their location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Within 2 seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The element leader gave the direction and distance to move; for example, "3 o'clock, 200 meters."</li> <li>b. Vehicle commanders repeated the "Incoming!" alert to squad personnel.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Personnel closed all hatches.</li> <li>(2) Drivers moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicles—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Halted as close as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount.</li> <li>(2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel kept low and ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions.</li> <li>b. Protected any dismounted personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The element members move to designated rally points according to the element operation order (OPORD).</li> <li>5. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
6. The element consolidates and reorganizes. * 7. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP) to higher headquarters (HQ). <b>NOTE: Digital units send the SHELREP using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Company

**TASK:** Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-92)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, and up to company-sized (mounted or dismounted) forces. The unit may be augmented with additional maneuver, combat support (CS), or combat service support (CSS) assets. Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element coordinates with the stationary unit, exchanges all the required information, and reports the results of the coordination. Digital units send and receive the reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The passage is conducted at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). There is no compromise of security, and the battle handover is completed as specified. If available, the company uses digital equipment as necessary or as directed to accomplish the mission. No friendly unit suffers casualties or damage to equipment as a result of fratricide. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The Digital Navigation System equipment allows constant situational awareness (SA) between elements conducting a linkup, passage of lines, or a relief operation (any operation that involves friendly units moving toward each other) to aid navigation and fratricide prevention. For example, a moving squad or vehicle can monitor the location of a stationary unit and linkup site using the position updates and digital graphics displayed on the digital display. The stationary unit can also monitor the location of the moving unit as it moves along the prescribed route to the linkup point by monitoring position updates on the digital display. As the moving force closes on the linkup site, the stationary force is more aware of its presence and location, reducing the possibility of fratricide. The moving unit does the same type of monitoring to reduce fratricide potential. Once the moving unit nears the linkup location, the stationary unit should challenge it. This may be done digitally, visually, or with audible sounds using any prearranged signals. For example, the stationary unit can give the moving unit a series of flashes using an infrared source during limited visibility. The moving force responds with a precoordinated number of flashes. The challenge and password is also used between the two units, digitally or verbally.</b></p> <p>* 1. The commander receives an OPORD from higher headquarters (HQ) and initiates planning and coordination for the operation.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 2. The passing force commander meets the stationary unit commander and arranges for a specific time and location for coordinating the passage of respective companies (platoon leaders should be included).</li> <li>3. The element conducts digital command and control (C2) of operations.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained SA.</li> <li>b. Submitted reports and overlays.</li> <li>c. Directed movement, positioning, and fires.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The leader or his representative coordinates the passage through and reentry of the lines with the forward unit leader or his representative.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the unit identification.</li> <li>b. Gave the times of departure and return.</li> <li>c. Gave the unit area of operations (AO).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The stationary unit commander provides the leader or his representative with the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided terrain information.</li> <li>b. Provided known or suspected enemy positions.</li> <li>c. Provided likely enemy ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Provided the latest enemy activity.</li> <li>e. Provided detailed information on friendly positions.</li> <li>f. Provided obstacle locations.</li> <li>g. Provided the fire support plan.</li> <li>h. Provided unit support; for example, fire support, litter teams, guides, communications, or reaction forces.</li> <li>i. Provided signal operation instructions (SOI) information, the signal plan, the reentry signal, the running password, and procedures to be used by the unit and guide during departure and reentry.</li> <li>j. Provided the locations of the dismounting point (if needed), the company assembly area (AA), routes, and contact and passage points.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. Leaders of the two units must plan for and coordinate the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the exchange of enemy intelligence.</li> <li>b. Planned for the reconnaissance of positions and routes.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the passing unit scheme of maneuver of the passing unit.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the exchange of communication information.</li> <li>e. Planned for recognition signals for the passage.</li> <li>f. Planned for guides (down to squad level) and traffic control measures.</li> <li>g. Planned for security measures for the passage.</li> <li>h. Coordinated fire support responsibilities and fire plans.</li> <li>i. Coordinated the transfer of responsibility and actions on enemy contact during passage.</li> <li>j. Coordinated CSS.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 7. Leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included contact points.</li> <li>b. Included passage routes and lanes.</li> <li>c. Included passage points.</li> <li>d. Included release points (RPs).</li> <li>e. Included AAs (rearward passage).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 8. Leaders exchange call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, challenges, and passwords to be used at the battle handover line.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 9. The commander and leaders physically locate the following during the reconnaissance:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Located passage routes and lanes.</li> <li>b. Located passage points.</li> <li>c. Located obstacle locations and safety lanes.</li> <li>d. Located RPs.</li> <li>e. Located AAs (for rearward passage).</li> <li>f. Located contact points.</li> <li>g. Located positions and actions of the stationary force during passage.</li> <li>h. Located CS and CSS elements, command posts (CPs), observation posts (OPs), and Javelin and mortar positions.</li> </ol> <p>*10. Both leaders ensure that their reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy. Stationary unit activities are continued as normal throughout the passage and continued after transfer of responsibility for the zone or sector.</p> <p>*11. The leader or his representative checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas, and they exchange any information that will assist them with their operations.</p> <p>12. The unit arrives and moves into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting by the stationary company commander.</p> <p>*13. The leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the elements on what was happening and what was going to happen.</li> <li>b. Briefed the elements on the ROE and the ROI.</li> <li>c. Confirmed the chain of command.</li> <li>d. Briefed the actions to be taken on contact.</li> <li>e. Briefed the actions to be taken in the absence of the leader.</li> <li>f. Provided the time schedule, the suspenses, and any limits on the actions.</li> </ol> <p>*14. The leader completes the final coordination according to task step 5 with the stationary unit leader or his representative at the CP.</p> <p>15. The company moves at the designated time to a covered and concealed position near the contact point.</p> <p>16. The elements link up with the guides that lead the security element from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The movement technique used may make the clearing team unnecessary; for example, the bounding overwatch.</b></p> <p>17. The security element clears the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position.</p> <p>18. The company moves forward to the RPs after the area is cleared</p> <p>19. The guides identify and account for all vehicles or personnel passing through the passage points, contact points, and RPs.</p> <p>20. The company is counted through the RPs by the executive officer (XO), the first sergeant (1SG), or a platoon sergeant (PSG).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>21. Both leaders collocate at a point to observe critical areas, make timely decisions during the passage, and facilitate passage of responsibility for battle handover. Passage movement is continuous.</p> <p>22. The company moves beyond the friendly unit final protection fires (FPF). After this, a security halt may be executed.</p> <p>23. The XO, 1SG, or PSG does not move forward from the RP until the leader is sure that he will not have to withdraw through the passage point.</p> <p>24. The companies move rapidly through the passage lanes to an AA or a new overwatch position.</p> <p>25. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI.</p> <p>26. The company or platoon reenters through the lines.</p> <p>27. The company halts and establishes security.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If in contact with the enemy, the company does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary unit lead the unit through the passage points, or long-range recognition signals are used to keep moving.</b></p> <p>28. The leader contacted the forward unit and informed it that the unit was ready to reenter.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The leader may remain outside friendly lines until daylight. Before reentry, if communications are not possible, a reconnaissance and security team contacts an OP, using the appropriate recognition signals or communication system. The OP then contacts the friendly unit leader. If no communications can be established and no OPs can be found, the leader directs a small security team to reconnoiter for the coordinated contact point.</b></p> <p>29. The leader directs a security team to the contact point when the message is acknowledged.</p> <p>30. The security team establishes contact with the guide using far-and-near recognition signals.</p> <p>31. The security team signals the company forward or goes back and leads the company to the passage point.</p> <p>32. The 1SG or XO and PSG count and identify each platoon as it passes through the passage point.</p> <p>33. The guides lead the unit, without halting, to an AA behind the friendly unit.</p> <p>34. The leader reports to the CP of the forward unit and gives the commander the tactical information in the commander's area of responsibility.</p> <p>35. The leader links up with the platoon in the AA and then leads the company back to a secure area for debriefing.</p> <p>36. The company or platoon conducts stationary unit activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established and manned contact points.</li> <li>b. Coordinated with the passing unit and exchanged information listed in task steps 3 through 7.</li> <li>c. Selected guides to link up with the passing unit at the coordinated time.</li> <li>d. Provided CS and CSS to the unit, if required.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Support may include evacuation of casualties, fire support, and resupply</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
of fuel and ammunition.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)  
 (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the main body of the element into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the main body of the element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected personnel.</li> <li>b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements.</li> <li>c. Determined essential equipment needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the location of the AA.</li> <li>b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA.</li> <li>c. Relayed the arrival time of the main body at the AA.</li> <li>d. Identified the march order.</li> <li>e. Relayed nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions.</li> <li>f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact.</li> <li>g. Established the MOPP level.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The quartering party moves along the march route.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained security.</li> <li>b. Reconnoitered the march route from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</li> <li>c. Monitored for NBC contamination.</li> <li>d. Marked obstacles and bypass routes.</li> <li>e. Reported critical information to the quartering party leader.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the arrival of the element.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location.</li> <li>b. Selected and posted guides in time to meet the main body.</li> <li>c. Marked entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>d. Marked vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security.</li> <li>e. Marked or removed mines and obstacles.</li> <li>f. Organized and posted local security.</li> </ol> <p>5. The element occupies the AA.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved the covered and concealed quartering party guides to selected or designated areas without halting.</li> <li>b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces.</li> </ol> <p>6. The element establishes the AA perimeter.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Positioned vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire.</li> <li>c. Established observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach.</li> <li>d. Established digital and FM communications between all positions using wire communications, if the time and situation permitted.</li> <li>e. Prepared range cards.</li> <li>f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions.</li> <li>g. Cleared the fields of fire.</li> <li>h. Camouflaged positions.</li> <li>i. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms and early warning devices.</li> </ol> <p>7. The element performs internal AA operations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>b. Distributed ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment.</li> <li>c. Established personal hygiene and field sanitation sites.</li> <li>d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline.</li> <li>e. Instituted a rest plan for element members and leaders.</li> <li>f. Inspected the AA.</li> </ol> <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates with the elements on the left and the right as a minimum.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements.</li> <li>b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and the elements signals.</li> <li>c. Coordinated local counterattacks.</li> <li>d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ol> <p>* 9. Leaders develop contingency plans.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed an evacuation plan.</li> <li>b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact.</li> </ol> <p>10. The unit conducts rehearsals.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Upon receipt of an operation order (OPORD), the element moves to a new location given in the OPORD and conducts operations at that location. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Threat mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Indicated the start point (SP).</li> <li>b. Identified locations of friendly units.</li> <li>c. Identified potential ambush sites.</li> <li>d. Identified checkpoints (CPs).</li> <li>e. Identified sites to be used for scheduled halts.</li> <li>f. Indicated the release point (RP).</li> </ul> <p>2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Dressed in the designated MOPP gear.</li> <li>b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm.</li> <li>c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices.</li> <li>d. Verified map information.</li> <li>e. Identified capacities of bridges and underpasses.</li> <li>f. Identified the location of culverts, ferries, forging areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>g. Prepared the map overlay.</li> <li>h. Computed the travel time.</li> <li>i. Prepared the strip map.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included military police (MP) support.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Included medical support.</li> <li>c. Included fire support (FS).</li> <li>d. Included engineer support.</li> <li>e. Included maintenance contact team support.</li> <li>f. Included additional requirements.</li>   <li>4. The element prepares vehicles and equipment.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>b. Corrected minor deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Reported major deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Hardened vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials.</li> <li>e. Covered unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel.</li> <li>f. Covered or removed reflective surfaces.</li> <li>g. Placed antennas at their lowest height.</li> <li>h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned cargo vehicle positions.</li> <li>b. Positioned control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> <li>c. Assigned recovery vehicle positions.</li> <li>d. Arranged hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy.</li> <li>e. Specified passenger locations.</li> <li>f. Appointed air guards.</li> <li>g. Organized the trail party element.</li> <li>h. Provided vehicle position listings to the trail party leader.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>b. Identified the convoy chain of command.</li> <li>c. Detailed the convoy route.</li> <li>d. Specified the march rate and the catch-up speed.</li> <li>e. Specified convoy intervals.</li> <li>f. Identified the scheduled halts.</li> <li>g. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>h. Briefed immediate-action security measures.</li> <li>i. Briefed blackout condition procedures.</li> <li>j. Specified the location of medical support.</li> <li>k. Specified the location of maintenance support.</li> <li>l. Briefed communication procedures.</li> <li>m. Specified the location and the identification of the destination.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>7. The convoy crosses the SP.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that vehicles had crossed the SP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.</li> </ul> </li>   <li>* 8. The convoy commander provides convoy information to higher HQ.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the SP crossing time.</li> <li>b. Reported the CP clearance, when crossed.</li> <li>c. Pointed out data that conflicted with the maps.</li> <li>d. Used the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions.</li> <li>e. Reported the RP crossing time.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>9. The convoy maintains march discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the designated march speed.</li> <li>b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals.</li> <li>c. Crossed CPs as scheduled.</li> <li>d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals.</li> <li>e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.</li> </ul> <p>10. The company conducts a scheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time.</li> <li>b. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles off the road.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Performed PMCS.</li> <li>f. Inspected vehicle loads.</li> <li>g. Departed at the specified time.</li> </ul> <p>11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted the march column.</li> <li>b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals.</li> <li>d. Established local security.</li> <li>e. Reported the resumption of the march to higher HQ.</li> </ul> <p>12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a visual adjustment period.</li> <li>b. Prepared vehicles for blackout conditions.</li> <li>c. Maintained prescribed vehicle distances.</li> <li>d. Wore night vision goggles (specified personnel).</li> <li>e. Wore regular eye protection goggles.</li> <li>f. Used ground guides during poor visibility periods.</li> </ul> <p>13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the disabled vehicles.</li> <li>b. Repaired the disabled vehicles, when possible.</li> <li>c. Towed the vehicles, if necessary.</li> <li>d. Reported the status of the vehicles to the convoy commander.</li> </ul> <p>14. The convoy moves through urban areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions.</li> <li>b. Used close-column formation.</li> <li>c. Obeyed traffic control directions.</li> <li>d. Used direction guides at critical intersections.</li> </ul> <p>15. The convoy crosses the RP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed at the specified time.</li> <li>b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance
19-1-1201	Prepare Traffic Control Plan

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-20.98) (FM 34-2-1)  
 (FM 7-92)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and a high volume of fire. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, the Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and the rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and reduce the combat power available to the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reacts immediately to the ambush based on the type (near, far). The platoon disengages the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, and higher headquarters (HQ) and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: Leaders ensure that the ROE and the ROI are disseminated to subordinate personnel.</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Personnel in the kill zone react to a near ambush (within hand grenade range).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Returned fire immediately; assumed covered positions; and threw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades.</li> <li>b. Assaulted individually through the ambush using individual fire and movement immediately after the grenades detonated.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Personnel not in the kill zone react to a near ambush.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Initiated immediate suppressive fires against the enemy.</li> <li>c. Took up covered positions.</li> <li>d. Shifted fires as personnel in the kill zone assaulted through the ambush.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand grenade range) immediately return fire and take up covered positions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Suppressed or destroyed enemy crew-served weapons first.</li> <li>b. Obscured the enemy position with smoke.</li> <li>c. Sustained suppressive fires and shifted them as the assaulting squads fought through the enemy position.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Personnel not receiving fire react to a far ambush.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moved by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy position.</li> <li>b. Assaulted using fire and movement techniques.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The element forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the element leader. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used indirect fires to isolate the enemy position.</li> <li>b. Adjusted fires on any retreating enemy.</li> </ul> * 6. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported the situation to higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Consolidated and reorganized as necessary.</li> <li>c. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted and employ indirect fires or air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required otherwise by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]), and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission.</li> <li>b. Gave the WO immediately after being alerted for the mission.</li> <li>c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued.</li> <li>d. Addressed items not covered in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions.</li> <li>b. Identified the route, the SP, the RP, critical points, and other control points.</li> <li>c. Provided the order of movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units.</li> <li>d. Established security tasks for subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air guard coverage for the entire element.</li> <li>e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; an air attack; a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Provided the soldiers with load guides.</li> <li>g. Ensured that subordinate leaders briefed their plans.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move.</li> <li>b. Completed a communications check using digital and FM radios to report the readiness of the unit element to move.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element conducts the road movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed the SP at the designated time.</li> <li>b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the march rate specified in the order or the unit SOP.</li> <li>c. Followed the prescribed route.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards.</li> <li>b. Oriented as directed to establish local security.</li> </ul> <p>6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD.</li> <li>b. Reported and reacted according to the unit SOP.</li> </ul> <p>7. The unit halts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene.</li> <li>b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security.</li> <li>c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT).</li> <li>d. Positioned vehicles in a herringbone formation.</li> <li>e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security.</li> <li>f. Checked the condition of personnel and equipment.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with the adjacent unit.</li> <li>h. Reported the status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The leader controls the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement.</li> <li>b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS.</li> <li>c. Used control measures from the order, and modified them as needed.</li> </ul> <p>9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Met the quartering party guide, if one was designated.</li> <li>b. Passed through the RP without halting.</li> <li>c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.</li> </ul>		



<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct Actions at Danger Areas (07-3-1135.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-8) (ARTEP 7-8-DRILL) (FM 3-21.71)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is part of a larger dismounted moving force that encounters a danger area that cannot be bypassed. The platoon must provide its own security. Rules of engagement (ROE) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from surprising the main body. The element moves all personnel and equipment across the danger area. The platoon prevents decisive engagement by the enemy. The United States (US) forces comply with the ROE. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader directs the platoon to take action on encountering a danger area.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the point man signaled "danger area" and that it was relayed throughout the platoon.</li> <li>b. Halted the platoon and maintained local security.</li> <li>c. Moved forward to the point man and confirmed the danger area.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader directs the lead squad to reconnoiter the danger area and makes an estimate based on information received.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed the route for the platoon if the danger area could be bypassed.</li> <li>b. Controlled the crossing of the danger area with minimum time spent in or near the danger area.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Informed all squad leaders of the situation.</li> <li>(2) Designated the nearside and farside rally points.</li> <li>(3) Directed the positioning of the nearside security team.</li> <li>(4) Selected a crossing point that provided cover and concealment.</li> <li>(5) Assigned the farside security team.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader selects the farside clearing method based on observable terrain. The secured area must be large enough to allow full deployment of the remainder of the platoon.</li> <li>4. The nearside security team provides security.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Observed to the flanks.</li> <li>b. Overwatched the crossing of the farside security team.</li> <li>c. Warned of enemy approach before the main body was engaged.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The farside team reconnoiters the farside.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crossed the danger area once the nearside security team was in place.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Reconnoitered the farside and ensured that any terrain (small hills, folds, or streambeds) that might have concealed enemy positions was clear of the enemy.</p> <p>c. Established an observation post (OP) forward of the cleared area.</p> <p>d. Signaled to the squad leader that the area was clear; the message was relayed to the platoon leader.</p> <p>6. The element crosses the danger area.</p> <p>a. Used the method designated by the platoon leader: line (all at once), wedge (file), small groups, or individually.</p> <p>b. Used nearside security to overwatch the platoon crossing.</p> <p>c. Crossed the danger area quickly and quietly.</p> <p>d. Executed Battle Drill 2, React to Contact (Army Training and Evaluation Program [ARTEP] 7-8-DRILL) if contact was made.</p> <p>e. Established local security once across the danger area.</p> <p>f. Completed the crossing with the nearside security team crossing the danger area and regaining its positions in the formation.</p> <p>7. The platoon continues the mission.</p> <p>a. Accounted for all members.</p> <p>b. Resumed tactical movement.</p> <p>c. Maintained the proper formation and personnel intervals.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)  
 (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is required to move cross-country, mounted or dismounted. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The element retains its ability to move. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader assigns areas of responsibility (AORs) during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned all squads to an AOR.</li> <li>b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual AORs.</li> <li>c. Ensured that there was all-around coverage of the platoon, including air guard.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The platoon leader designates a route for the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation.</li> <li>b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Formed one or two wedges based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.</li> <li>b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. Maintained the rate of movement.</li> <li>c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader designates a movement technique to use that is based on METT-TC factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a traveling-movement technique when enemy contact was not likely.</li> <li>b. Designated a traveling-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was possible.</li> <li>c. Designated a bounding-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was likely.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. The element performs a traveling-movement technique.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted.</p> <p>c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted.</p> <p>d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>6. The element performs a traveling-overwatch-movement technique.  <b>NOTE: When dismounted, the lead element uses a traveling-overwatch-movement technique, and the trailing squads use a traveling-movement technique.</b></p> <p>a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the main body of the platoon by 50 to 100 meters.</p> <p>b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the element; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart.</p> <p>c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.</p> <p>7. The element performs a bounding-overwatch-movement technique.</p> <p>a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch.</p> <p>b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.</p> <p>8. The bounding squad moves.</p> <p>a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement.</p> <p>b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound.</p> <p>c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed.</p> <p>d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operations security (OPSEC).</p> <p>e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element.</p> <p>f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound to overwatch the succeeding bound.</p> <p>g. Informed the element leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch.</p> <p>h. Alerted the element leader and the overwatching element of any enemy that was detected, any obstacles that were encountered, or any danger areas.</p> <p>9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch.</p> <p>a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the movement of the bounding squad to its next overwatch position.</p> <p>b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions.</p> <p>c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route.</p> <p>d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed.</p> <p>e. Alerted the bounding squad and the element leader of any enemy that it detected.</p> <p>f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.</p> <p>10. The element maintains security during movement.</p> <p>a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).</p> <p>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Observed sectors of fires to avoid any enemy that was approaching the platoon within 35 meters and any aircraft that was attacking the platoon without warning.</p> <p>*11. Leaders use control measures during the movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement.</li> <li>b. Positioned key weapons.</li> <li>c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement.</li> </ul> <p>*12. The element leader controls movement of the elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas.</li> <li>b. Used arm-and-hand signals once contact was made.</li> <li>c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made.</li> </ul> <p>*13. The element leader knows the elements location at all times.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Expressed the location of the platoon as a 6-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics.</li> <li>b. Knew the location of all the elements including the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements. Was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS) (05-2-0100)  
(FM 5-71-2) (FM 3-34.2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a contemporary operating environment, supporting a maneuver task force (TF). The integration of FS into breaching operations and the obstacle plan are necessary to support operations. The fire support officer or section is available. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The staff or operations section develops indirect-fire plans to provide suppression or obscuration for the breach forces and to cover tactical obstacles. The staff or operations sections coordinates with the fire support officer or section to request fires in support of operations. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander and the executive officer (XO) prepare for offensive and defensive tactical operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Participated in developing a TF course of action (COA).</li> <li>b. Prepared a supporting scheme of engineer operations (SOEO).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander and the XO, in coordination with the fire support officer (FSO), prepare for offensive operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a FS plan that supported the SOEO.</li> <li>b. Ascertained the priority for the artillery support for the breach and assault forces.</li> <li>c. Established adequate fire control measures to support the breaching operation.</li> <li>d. Coordinated for the screening or obscuration smoke and suppressive artillery fires.</li> <li>e. Identified the location of counterfire radar zones.</li> <li>f. Developed a plan for the employment of scatterable mines (SCATMINES), to include a time analysis of triggers, and ensured that there was enough time to fire the SCATMINE to achieve the planned obstacle effect.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The commander and the XO, in coordination with the FSO, prepare for defensive operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed an FS plan that supported the SOEO.</li> <li>b. Detailed adequate plans to support and reinforce the desired obstacle effect, and ensured that all obstacles were covered by direct- and indirect-fire plans.</li> <li>c. Established adequate fire control measures, ensuring that priority obstacles were covered to accomplish the obstacle intent.</li> <li>d. Determined the employment of the area-denial artillery munition (ADAM) and the remote antiarmor mine (RAAM) SCATMINES.</li> <li>e. Planned the synchronization and integration of FS for the reserve targets.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
<p><b>NOTE: The digital units request fires through FM or digital means.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)
05-3-0114	Conduct Breaching Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of (or information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives and analyzes the mission and identifies all unit tasks.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) as soon as possible to subordinate leaders.</li> <li>* 3. The element leader and the operations section make a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance or survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air- or indirect-fire support, and medical support and coordinated the element plan with units in the area of operations, if necessary.</li> <li>c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader orders units to start movement, if necessary.</li> <li>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters the operations area and performs a map reconnaissance as a minimum.</li> <li>* 6. The element leader completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 7. The element leader supervises preparations of the reconnaissance or survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.</p> <p>8. The element conducts a tactical road march or executes a traveling movement to the reconnaissance or survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission required.</li> <li>b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and the physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission.</li> <li>c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.</li> </ul> <p>9. The headquarters (HQ), if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance or survey unit recovery operations.</p> <p>*10. The element leader or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs the returning reconnaissance or survey units and forwards the acquired information to higher HQ in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.</p> <p>*11. The radiological element leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation exposure status (RES) readings to higher HQ.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1220	Conduct Fire and Maneuver Operations
05-3-1239	Plan and Control Indirect Fire
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader checks the accountability and serviceability of the NBC defense equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes.</li> <li>c. Identified equipment shortages.</li> <li>d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Donned masks and hoods within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers take actions to protect themselves against an NBC attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Set up and used collective protective shelters (if available).</li> <li>b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted?</li> <li>(2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> <li>(3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons?</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Was it day or night?</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) What were current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)? (3) What were weather conditions 2, 4, and 6 hours in the future (see the CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the element status and mission. Took the following into consideration: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The element protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification.</li> <li>b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, either their right or left ankles, and the vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters.</li> <li>b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover, consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</b></p> <p>* 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP4.</li> <li>b. Ensured that individual and element fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level.</p>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators of a chemical or biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal).</li> <li>b. Ensured that soldiers put on their protective masks within 9 seconds.</li> <li>c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Sought additional shelter, if available.</li> <li>e. Administered a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable).</li> <li>f. Administered nerve agent antidotes to selves (if applicable).</li> <li>g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed.</li> </ul> <p>2. Soldiers take additional protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies.</li> <li>b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits.</li> <li>c. Applied prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted skin decontamination.</li> <li>b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits.</li> <li>c. Conducted operator spray down of equipment.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.</li> </ul>		



TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a strike warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Authenticated the call.</li> <li>b. Acknowledged the warning by returning the message.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Warned subordinate and affected units.</li> <li>b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed.</li> </ul> <p>3. Soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions).</li> <li>b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment.</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Digital units ensured that the systems were prepared according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>h. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order.</p> <p>2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Placed vehicles and equipment where the terrain shielding was best (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions).</li> <li>b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Tied down essential antennas.</li> <li>d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit SOP or other guidance.</li> <li>e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects.</li> <li>f. Zeroed dosimeters.</li> <li>g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.</li> <li>h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available).</li> <li>i. Used field-expedient shelters.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued periodic monitoring.</li> <li>b. Reported all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed individuals to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose rate).</li> <li>c. Ensured that radiac equipment operators checked the instruments.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares for the crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, used sandbags on the vehicle floor).</li> <li>b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>c. Started continuous monitoring.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided stirring up dust.</li> <li>b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should have been buttoned up).</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>e. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-50)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke.</li> <li>b. Exploited threat smoke to conceal its own movements.</li> <li>c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat use of smoke.</li> <li>d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit.</li> <li>b. Determined the wind direction and speed.</li> <li>c. Determined where to release the smoke and where it would travel.</li> <li>d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations.</li> <li>e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan.</li> <li>f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit position.</li> <li>g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in the smoke.</li> <li>b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> <li>b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		



<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves.</li> <li>b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> <li>d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment.</li> </ul> <p>2. Designated personnel monitor fallout.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments.</li> <li>b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible.</li> <li>c. Calculated the optimum time of exit.</li> <li>d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure.</li> <li>b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The unit leader submits reports according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack.</p> <p>a. Without warning, soldiers—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Closed their eyes immediately.</li> <li>(2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their head toward the blast (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle).</li> <li>(3) Kept their heads and their faces down and helmets on.</li> <li>(4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling.</li> </ol> <p>b. With warning, soldiers—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters.</li> <li>(2) Moved to the shelter.</li> <li>(3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.</li> <li>(4) Kept clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times.</li> <li>(5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.</li> </ol> <p>* 2. Leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablished the chain of command.</li> <li>b. Reestablished communications.</li> <li>c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>d. Treated casualties.</li> <li>e. Reported casualties.</li> <li>f. Evacuated casualties.</li> <li>g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation.</li> <li>h. Implemented continuous monitoring.</li> <li>i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required.</li> <li>k. Extinguished all fires.</li> </ol> <p>* 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids.</li> <li>b. Performed operator maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.</li> </ul> 5. Soldiers improve cover. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose dense covering material.</li> <li>b. Covered in depth.</li> <li>c. Provided strong support.</li> <li>d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-5) (FM 3-11.11)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, element decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination element is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The contaminated unit determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received input from staff and subordinate leaders.</li> <li>b. Established decontamination priorities.</li> </ul> <p>2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request, as a minimum, included the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Contaminated element designation.</li> <li>b. Contaminated element location.</li> <li>c. Contaminated element frequency and call sign.</li> <li>d. Time that the element became contaminated.</li> <li>e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated.</li> <li>f. Type of contamination.</li> <li>g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a element decontamination team).</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The contaminated unit leader coordinates with higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain the necessary support.</li> <li>b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Coordinated with supporting units.  d. Requested replacement MOPP gear.  e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>* 4. The contaminated unit leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected—  a. Provided adequate overhead concealment.  b. Provided good drainage.  c. Provided easy access and exit (but off the main routes).  d. Provided the proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down.  e. Provided an area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle washdown site and the MOPP gear exchange site).</p> <p>5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit).  a. Requested operational decontamination support.  b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination.  c. Established communications with the decontamination element.  d. Ensured that the decontamination element knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination sites.</p> <p>6. The contaminated element and supporting elements move to the decontamination site.  a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated.  b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site by the contaminated element.</p> <p>7. The elements prepare for operational decontamination.  a. Set up the decontamination site.  (1) The supporting decontamination element crew set up the vehicle washdown site.  (2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site.  (3) The remainder of the element prepared its equipment for decontamination.  b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area.  (1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.  (2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when the crews do not dismount.</b></p> (3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. (a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper intervals). (b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered. (4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle washdown site. (5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site. <p>* 8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination element supervises the operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that vehicle operators—</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</p> <p>b. Washed vehicles.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(1) Started at the top and worked down.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(3) Monitored water consumption.</p> <p>c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle wash down.</p> <p>d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix).</p> <p>b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed.</p> <p>c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material).</p> <p>d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system.</p> <p>e. Moved soldiers to the AA after completing MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p><b>1. Ensure that the supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding.</b></p> <p><b>2. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an NBC 4 report) to higher HQ.</b></p> <p>*10. Element leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*11. The contaminated element leader reports to higher HQ.</p> <p>a. Reported the completion and location of the vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites.</p> <p>b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazards were detected.</p> <p>c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</p> <p>12. The contaminated element continues the mission.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**



**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employed a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route.</li> <li>b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission.</li> <li>c. Obtained a route clearance and approval.</li> </ul> <p>2. The unit prepares to cross the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area.</li> <li>b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route or had strip maps.</li> <li>c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement).</li> <li>d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material.</li> <li>e. Attached M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.</li> </ul> <p>3. The unit crosses the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.</li> <li>b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.</li> <li>c. Crossed the area as quickly and carefully as possible.</li> </ul> <p>4. The unit exits the contaminated area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Conducted necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Continued the mission.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Direct Combat Road or Trail Construction (05-1-1002)  
 (FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-34)  
 (FM 5-430-00-2) (FM 5-71-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. Roads, trails, and bypasses must be constructed to support the maneuver combat service (CS) and combat service support (CSS) movement in the maneuver area. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and the systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** An order is created and disseminated to subordinate elements to construct combat roads, trails, and bypasses to facilitate the movement of combat, CS, and CSS elements in the area of operations (AO). As a minimum, the order will contain the start and end points, the general route location, lane requirements, traffic density (vehicle types and numbers), and the completion time. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader receives the mission, guidance, and works with the staff. He—                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the initial assets available.</li> <li>b. Determined the initial time available for the required construction effort.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the current intelligence picture.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader and staff conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) and an engineer battlefield assessment (EBA) to develop facts and assumptions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a terrain analysis of the area.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reviewed all available terrain information, reconnaissance reports (using the Digital Reconnaissance System [DRS]) and terrain analysis products (using the Digital Topographic Support System [DTSS]).</li> <li>(2) Determined the proposed routes; soil characteristics; vegetation coverage; drainage abilities; weather impacts; and limiting characteristics, such as slopes, waterways, and craters.</li> <li>(3) Proposed the routes, determined the additional reconnaissance effort required for verification, and obtained additional data when required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Identified the mission of the enemy and mobility/survivability (M/S) capabilities.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reviewed the current enemy intelligence information on the Maneuver Control System (MCS) and the enemy doctrine template for the engineer capabilities of the enemy.</li> <li>(2) Determined the situation of the enemy and the tentative enemy engineer employment along the proposed construction area.</li> <li>(3) Determined the tentative security requirements for the proposed construction effort.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Identified the friendly forces mission and M/S capabilities.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: Combat trails may be constructed with organic engineer assets, which are usually made for tracked vehicle traffic. Combat road and bypass construction usually requires assets that may not be organic to the brigade, but may be available through outside resources, such as corps assets, host nation (HN) support, and friendly foreign assets.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reviewed the engineer task organization. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Identified the equipment availability and capabilities and the known work rates of the equipment and personnel to be used in the construction effort.</li> <li>(b) Determined if additional capabilities or equipment was required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Reviewed the availability of accessible critical construction resources and determined what impact this had on the construction effort.</li> <li>(3) Verified the timeline with the brigade Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or the supported element.</li> <li>(4) Reviewed any new information received and determined its impact on the mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: This is a continuing process.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 3. The element leader and staff analyze the engineer mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the specified and implied tasks to be accomplished throughout the maneuver area.</li> <li>b. Determined the total assets available, including subordinate, adjacent, higher, and HN support.</li> <li>c. Determined any limitations (constraints and restrictions) throughout the AO.</li> <li>d. Conducted a risk analysis as it applied to the engineer mission.</li> <li>e. Developed a mission timeline in conjunction with the maneuver S3 or supported unit.</li> <li>f. Developed an essential task list for all missions in the AO.</li> <li>g. Restated the mission as it applied to the engineer effort.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader and staff develop the scheme of engineer operations (SOEO). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the priority of effort and support of engineer assets.</li> <li>b. Determined the ratio of assets required verses the assets available.</li> <li>c. Determined what additional assets were required and available to meet the construction and timeline criteria.</li> <li>d. Tailored and integrated each SOEO into each maneuver unit course of action (COA).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The element leader and staff war-game the SOEO with the maneuver staff. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined which SOEO best supported the maneuver plan and mission accomplishment.</li> <li>b. Determined the weaknesses in the engineer plan and made adjustments, as necessary.</li> <li>c. Requested additional assets through the proper channels, if required.</li> <li>d. Integrated the enemy engineer assets and actions into the Intelligence Officer's (US Army) (S2's) enemy play.</li> <li>e. Determined the security requirements for the construction effort.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. The element leader recommends a COA to the main element leader and obtains additional resources as per the element leader's approval and guidance to effectively meet that COA. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recommended a COA that would best support the plan of the maneuver unit.</li> <li>b. Identified where the risks must be accepted.</li> <li>c. Identified the additional resources required.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Identified the assets needed to minimize the risks.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader and staff finalize the construction plan and issue orders.  <b>NOTE: The digital units send orders and coordinating instructions using the MCS or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <p>a. Finalized the engineer task organization.</p> <p>b. Made final coordination with the maneuver element leader and staff on resources, security, and timelines.</p> <p>c. Issued orders, such as the scheme of engineer operation (SOEO), the subunit instructions, the engineer operation order (OPORD), the coordinating instructions, and the engineer annex.</p> <p>(1) Ensured that subunit instructions and/or orders included as a minimum the—</p> <p>(a) Start and end points.</p> <p>(b) General route location.</p> <p>(c) Lane requirements.</p> <p>(d) Traffic density.</p> <p>(e) Completion time.</p> <p>(f) Coordinating instructions for the attached and/or operational control (OPCON) units and handover instructions, if required.</p> <p>(2) Verified instructions to the follow-on units.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0027	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment
05-2-0125	Provide Support for Mobility Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Support a River Crossing Operation (05-1-1004)  
 (FM 90-13) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is supporting a maneuver force during a deliberate river crossing operation in a contemporary operating environment. The higher headquarters (HQ) selects the reconnaissance site, and the subordinate elements complete the reconnaissance. The company is tasked to prepare and maintain a crossing site, support an assault boat crossing, or prepare and operate engineer regulating points (ERPs). Bridging assets are available. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The condition of the crossing site does not interfere with the planned flow of the vehicles across the river. The assault force gets to the far shore at the right time, in the right place, and in the correct order; or the ERPs facilitate a smooth traffic flow across the rafts or bridge according to the crossing schedule. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures with emphasis on the preparation of supporting a river crossing operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the personnel and equipment needed to support the river crossing.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the mission with the platoon leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that each element understood the mission.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the equipment for each platoon was checked for serviceability and that each platoon had everything that was required for the specified mission.</li> <li>e. Task-organized the company to support the mission, and identified the organic personnel and equipment support needed for preparing ERPs and crossing sites.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) to obtain any additional specific details of the mission and, if needed, requested augmentation support.</li> </ul> <p>2. The company supports an assault boat crossing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the assault boats.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Inflated the boats.</li> <li>(2) Checked for proper equipment.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>( a ) Ensured that enough paddles for a silent crossing were available (11 per boat).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>( b ) Ensured that the outboard motors (OBMs) for a powered crossing were available.</p> <p>( c ) Ensured that enough floatation devices were available (1 per soldier).</p> <p>(3) Ensured that one boat per assault site (powered by an OBM, if available) was designated as a safety boat, if practical.</p> <p>b. Rehearsed the crossing with the assault force during daytime and nighttime conditions.</p> <p>c. Designated an engineer crossing control officer to supervise the embarkation of the assault waves and follow-up force at each assault site.</p> <p>d. Designated an engineer landing officer to control the debarkation on the far shore.</p> <p>e. Marked the far-shore exit points, ensuring that each boat had a specific landing point. The point should be visible during daylight and under reduced visibility conditions.</p> <p>f. Established dismounted rally points on the near shore to link up the assaulting forces with the boats.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Each assaulting wave may use the same rally points as the previous wave.</b></p> <p>(1) Crossed each assaulting force in the order designated in the operation order (OPORD) and the crossing plan.</p> <p>(2) Manned the rally points.</p> <p>g. Operated the assault boats.</p> <p>(1) Operated each boat with three engineers during a silent crossing or two engineers during a powered crossing.</p> <p>(2) Used enough passengers in the silent crossing to paddle and control the boat across the river.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The RB-15 has a maximum capacity of 15 passengers. However, equipment required during the assault may reduce the number of passengers that the boat can safely carry. The distance across the river and the current of the river are the governing factors. If conditions permit, each boat should carry squad-size elements to maintain squad integrity.</b></p> <p>(3) Maintained the assault boats on line and in the order specified by the maneuver crossing force.</p> <p>(4) Landed the boats in the correct location on the far shore.</p> <p>h. Deflated the boats on the far shore or returned them to the near shore for another wave of assault troops. The boats that were returned for another wave arrived at the correct location on the near shore to facilitate a smooth linkup with follow-on forces.</p> <p>i. Repeated the procedure in subtask 2g until all of the assault waves had crossed.</p> <p>3. The company identifies and maintains a crossing site when ordered.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units update the digital overlay with the location of the crossing site as required according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <p>a. Identified a crossing site using a map or ground reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Selected a site at the narrow part of the river.</p> <p>(2) Ensured that the current was less than 1.5 meters per second (mps), if possible.</p> <p>(3) Confirmed that both ingress and egress routes were available on both banks.</p> <p>(4) Ensured that bank slopes were less than 33 percent for an amphibious vehicle swim site.</p> <p>(5) Ensured appropriate bank heights for the following:</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) A raft with ramps (no greater than 1 meter for vertical banks).</li> <li>(b) An M4T6 or Class 60 bridge (76 centimeters).</li> <li>(c) A ribbon bridge or raft (1 meter).</li> </ul> <p>(6) Checked for adequate water depth.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensured a water depth of 2 meters for amphibious vehicles.</li> <li>(b) Ensured a water depth of over 127 centimeters for shallow draft, bridge erection boats, light tactical rafts, and ribbon bridges.</li> <li>(c) Ensured a water depth of over 102 centimeters for a 27-foot bridge erection boat.</li> </ul> <p>(7) Selected a site where the river bottom did not have obstructions that could interfere with amphibious vehicles, boats, or rafts.</p> <p>b. Prepared the crossing site for heavy equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Covered the entry bank with a gravel base or mobile matting to maintain trafficability.</li> <li>(2) Prepared the exit bank with the same considerations as the entrance bank. Ensured that vehicles swimming across were able to climb the exit bank.</li> <li>(3) Marked the entry and exit points for both day and night crossings according to the OPORD.</li> <li>(4) Ensured that the width of the entry and exit banks matched the width required for the crossing vehicles.</li> </ul> <p>c. Ensured that the conditions of the crossing site did not interfere with swim, raft, or bridge operations.</p> <p>4. The company prepares and operates ERPs in staging or holding areas or at crossing sites.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided enough space in a covered and concealed location for vehicles moving to the crossing site.</li> <li>b. Located ERPs on or near ingress routes to the crossing site. The travel time from the ERP to the crossing site was less than the round-trip crossing time for a raft.</li> <li>c. Checked the vehicles at the ERP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Checked the vehicles outside the crossing area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Briefed the drivers of the vehicle on raft or bridge crossing requirements.</li> <li>(b) Ensured that vehicle weights did not exceed the raft or bridge capacity.</li> <li>(c) Diverted the over-class vehicles.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Checked the vehicles before getting to the raft sites. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Identified the carrying capacity of rafting or bridging equipment.</li> <li>(b) Established raft loads that preserved unit integrity.</li> <li>(c) Guided the vehicles to the rafts.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(3) Checked the vehicles before getting to the bridge sites. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Diverted the over-class vehicles.</li> <li>(b) Guided the vehicles within the crossing site to facilitate a smooth traffic flow. Ensured that the vehicles maintained a 100-foot spacing and did not exceed 40 kilometers per hour (kmph) on bridges during normal crossings.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 5. The company commander submits progress reports to higher HQ using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) or FM means according to the unit SOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-198-1329	Prepare Ribbon Bridge Equipment for Air Transport

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Emplace Situational Obstacles (05-1-2001)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a contemporary operating environment as part of a maneuver brigade or task force (TF). An approved maneuver plan is provided for the emplacement of ground-emplaced situational tactical obstacles to protect the maneuver brigade or TF. Class V (mines), equipment, and personnel are available. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and all systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Triggers are identified and reported in an accurate and timely manner. The obstacles are emplaced to achieve the desired effect in conjunction with direct or indirect fires. The element enforces standards to minimize the loss of personnel or equipment. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element positions Volcanoes or intelligent wide area munitions (WAM) and necessary Class V reloads where they can react within the established timelines. * 2. The element leader conducts rehearsals. 3. The element emplaces the situational obstacles. <b>NOTE: The digital units send reports and update the digital obstacle overlay using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System.</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided operations security (OPSEC), physical protection, and maintenance of Volcano or WAM assets.</li> <li>b. Observed and reported enemy action in the named areas of interest (NAIs).</li> <li>c. Confirmed the decision to emplace obstacles.</li> <li>d. Emplaced minefields in the tactical area of interest (TAI) before the enemy arrived.</li> <li>e. Reported the status.</li> <li>f. Recovered and repositioned the Volcano or WAM assets.</li> <li>g. Established security.</li> <li>h. Emplaced a marking system, if applicable.</li> <li>i. Reported the location of the obstacles to higher HQ according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-2077	Operate a Ground Volcano System
052-192-2080	Perform Volcano Bit and Arm Tests
052-192-2081	Perform a Volcano Mine Canister Test
052-192-2082	Operate a Volcano Dispenser Control Unit
052-192-3140	Direct the Mounting of a Volcano Dispenser on a Ground Vehicle
052-192-4110	Determine Volcano Minefield Logistical Requirements

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Platoon)
05-3-0110	Emplace a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Disrupt or Fix Minefield

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Company  
 Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Direct Survivability Construction (05-1-3001)  
 (FM 5-103) (FM 5-71-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. Survivability and obstacle plans have been formulated. The battalion commander has task-organized digging assets under the control of the battalion. The digital elements have performed functionality checks, and the systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The survivability plan is executed and fighting and/or protective positions are constructed to standard according to priorities and timelines. The digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader issues an operation order (OPORD) containing the construction plan.</li> <li>* 2. The element leader supervises coordination with the maneuver commanders and on-site engineer officers in charge (OICs) to determine the physical location of direct- and indirect-fire weapons systems and other brigade assets that require protection.</li> <li>* 3. The element leader and staff coordinates for maintenance and refueling.</li> <li>* 4. The element leader supervises the execution of the construction matrix and adjusts the plan, as necessary.</li> <li>5. The battalion reports the status to the engineer and maneuver brigades and updates the common operating picture (COP) using either FM or digital-reporting procedures on the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and the Maneuver Control System (MCS) according to unit standing operating procedures (SOPs).</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-227-3120	Direct the Construction of a Vehicle Fighting Position

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0127	Provide Support for Survivability Operations
05-2-0518	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-1-3002)  
 (FM 20-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is tactically deployed in a contemporary operating environment. The enemy has air and ground surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Personnel and camouflage resources are available. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within a small arms range. The location or identity of the element cannot be determined through an aerial or ground surveillance. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects the concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicle operators used the concealed routes, whenever possible, following and paralleling hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the vehicle track signature continued past the parked location to another logical spot.</li> </ul> <p>2. The operators maneuver the vehicles along concealed routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the existing tracks.</li> <li>b. Avoided movement near the terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that may have been used as a reference point by enemy ground or aerial fires.</li> <li>c. Obliterated the vehicle tracks where they turned and concealed the vehicle positions.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element conceals the vehicles and equipment.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The leader is provided intelligence data on enemy reconnaissance capabilities in the area of operations (AO).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows.</li> <li>b. Positioned the vehicles and equipment so that their shapes blended with the surroundings.</li> <li>c. Used natural materials to distort and combine with the shapes or shadows of the vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>d. Blended natural materials with the surrounding area.</li> <li>e. Replaced the cut vegetation when it withered or changed color.</li> <li>f. Used nets to create shadows.</li> <li>g. Used the camouflage-screening systems to enhance natural materials.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Kept the heat sources (generators, engines, and mess areas) under the screening systems, even when using natural concealment.</li> <li>i. Covered shiny objects, such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies.</li> <li>j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain) when the situation permitted.</li> <li>k. Concealed the vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain.</li> <li>l. Disguised the vehicles and equipment to change their appearance or to resemble something of a lesser or greater threat to the enemy.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. Leaders enforce camouflage discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the element activities did not change the area appearance or reveal the presence of military equipment.</li> <li>b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night.</li> <li>c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking it with the terrain, defilade positions, or shields.</li> <li>d. Ensured the prompt and completed policing of debris or spoil from the area.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. Leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) information from higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates.</li> <li>c. Incorporated SATRAN information into the tactical plan.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-1-3003)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-90.1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is conducting convoy operations in support of a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. The operation order (OPORD) and rules of engagement (ROE) provide guidance for the mission and the actions to take upon contact. The enemy squad- to platoon-size force attacks the main body of the convoy. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages from the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage by taking immediate action. The digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader prepares for combat operations.  <b>NOTE: The digital units set stale settings to provide current friendly and enemy unit locations.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>b. Established radio communications with security elements.</li> <li>c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire).</li> <li>d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the movement, and ensured that the convoy had 360° coverage while moving.</li> <li>e. Designated en route rally points and the actions to be taken at those points.</li> <li>f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route.</li> <li>g. Received an update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units receive updated intelligence information through the Force XXI Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or the Maneuver Control System (MCS).</b></p> <p>2. The element prepares for combat operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Loaded vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The air guards are present.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition.</li> <li>c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all standing operating procedures (SOPs).</p> <p>3. The element takes the following actions to reduce the effectiveness of ambushes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Hardened vehicles and covered loads.</li> <li>b. Spaced prime targets throughout the convoy.</li> <li>c. Wore protective clothing and used assistant drivers.</li> <li>d. Carried troops and supplies.</li> <li>e. Tracked the vehicle in front, and avoided driving on the shoulder of the road.</li> <li>f. Did not run over foreign objects, brush, or grass in the road, whenever possible.</li> <li>g. Avoided fresh earth in the road. Watched the local national traffic and the reactions of people on foot.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: People on foot will frequently give away the location of any mines or booby traps.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Used heavy vehicles, such as tanks, to explode small mines when deployed in front of the convoy.</li> <li>i. Briefed prearranged signals to warn the convoy of an ambush.</li> <li>j. Used escort vehicles (military police, tanks, or armored vehicles) or gun trucks.</li> <li>k. Briefed and practiced immediate action drills, thoroughly, with all convoy personnel.</li> <li>l. Maintained an interval between vehicles and moved through the kill zone, if possible.</li> <li>m. Stopped short of the ambush and did not block the road.</li> <li>n. Responded to orders rapidly, returned fire aggressively, and counterattacked with escort vehicles.</li> <li>o. Called for artillery support, tactical air (TACAIR) support, and reserve force, if necessary.</li> </ul> <p>4. The convoy reacts to enemy contact.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at identified enemy positions.</li> <li>b. Sought available cover.</li> <li>c. Maneuvered vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy and moved all unarmed vehicles to cover.</li> <li>d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy.</li> <li>e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the element leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The element leader develops the situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated fire and maneuver.</li> <li>b. Requested indirect-fire support.</li> <li>c. Sought information on the enemy strength, composition, and disposition.</li> <li>d. Evaluated the direction and volume of the enemy fire, confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The element leader selects a course of action based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy flank.</li> <li>b. Conducted a frontal assault.</li> <li>c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
7. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities). * 8. The element leader reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters (HQ). 9. The element reorganizes and resumes its convoy. a. Reconstituted the security force. b. Treated and evacuated casualties. c. Reported casualties. d. Redistributed ammunition and equipment. e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-1-3005)  
 (FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a contemporary operating environment. While moving mounted or dismounted, the element discovers minefield marking indicators or a mine strike occurs. Personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. The digital units send and receive orders and reports and update the common operational picture (COP) using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>DANGER: PERFORM THE STEPS IN THIS TASK EXACTLY AS FOLLOWS: STOP, ASSESS, NOTE, DRAW BACK, AND INFORM (SANDI). FAILURE TO DO THIS MAY RESULT IN SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element <b>stops</b> and gains control of the patrol.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Stopped and did not move.</li> <li>b. Warned the rest of the patrol.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader <b>assesses</b> the situation of both the mines and individuals within the patrol.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined if the element was in the middle of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Determined the nearest safe location.</li> <li>c. Determined the shortest route to the known safe area.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader <b>notes</b> the situation for future reference.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Made notes about mine indicators, exposed trip wires, and mines that were seen.</li> <li>b. Indicated the number of mines located.</li> <li>c. Annotated the terrain considerations.</li> <li>d. Indicated the location of the minefield.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The element <b>draws back</b> to the last known safe area.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a self-extraction when dismounted and when footprints were not clearly visible by using the stepping-stone method.</li> <li>b. Performed the look-feel-probe drill.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Looked for mine indicators on the ground or in the immediate area.</li> <li>(2) Felt for trip wires on the ground where the individual was to place their feet and informed the element leader, if a mine was found.</li> <li>(3) Probed the stepping-stone area.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Extracted casualties.</p> <p><b>DANGER: ENTERING A MINEFIELD TO EXTRACT A FELLOW SOLDIER IS EXTREMELY HAZARDOUS AND CAN RESULT IN ADDITIONAL CASUALTIES. SOLDIERS MUST RESIST THE URGE TO RACE IN AND ASSIST THE CASUALTY.</b></p> <p>(1) Used the single-casualty method in a minefield.</p> <p>(a) Called for help. Established communication with the casualty if he was conscious. Instructed the soldier to remain still and administered self-help first aid. Reassured the casualty by telling him that help was coming.</p> <p>(b) Identified the shortest and easiest route to reach the casualty. Cleared a 1-meter-wide path if the carry technique for a casualty extraction was used. Cleared a 2-meter-wide path if the casualty was extracted on a stretcher and used the look-feel-probe drill from the prone position. Marked the path while progressing down it.</p> <p>(c) Cleared a 1- or 2-meter area around the casualty (depending on the extraction technique) to provide a safe working area for the medical and litter teams. Cleared up to and under the casualty in case he was lying on a mine.</p> <p>(d) Removed the casualty and moved him to a medical facility.</p> <p>(e) Marked and reported the minefield after leaving it.</p> <p>(2) Used the vehicle or convoy extraction method.</p> <p>(a) Stopped immediately.</p> <p>(b) Used a radio to brief the situation to appropriate higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>(c) Remained in the vehicle and awaited extraction, if assistance was available.</p> <p>(d) Extracted personnel from the rear of the vehicle and walked carefully, following in the visible vehicle tracks, to the last known safe area.</p> <p><b>DANGER: TRACKED VEHICLE TRACKS MAY ALSO BE FOLLOWED BUT CAUTION MUST BE TAKEN BECAUSE SMALL ANTIPERSONNEL (AP) MINE FUZES ARE SOMETIMES MISSED BY THE TRACK PINS AND NOT DETONATED. THESE MINES STILL POSE A THREAT TO PERSONNEL WALKING ALONG THE VEHICLE TRACK MARKS. IF THERE ARE NO VISIBLE TIRE OR TRACK MARKS, CREWS MUST EXIT THE VEHICLE USING THE LOOK-FEEL-PROBE DRILL AND CLEAR THEIR WAY TO A SAFE AREA.</b></p> <p>* 5. The element leader <b>informs</b> higher HQ of the situation.</p> <p>6. The element marks the minefield.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader submits the proper report.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-2150	Setup an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]), Preoperation
052-192-2151	Operate an M71 Remote Control Unit (for the Hornet)
052-192-2152	Emplace an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Remote Operations
052-192-3201	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Area Distribution
052-192-3202	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) in a Gauntlet
052-192-3203	Direct the Employment of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) with a Conventional Minefield
052-192-4201	Supervise the Placement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) Field
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Establish Jobsite Security (05-1-3006)  
 (FM 7-8) (FM 3-90.1) (FM 5-10)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, the element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. Security elements are coordinated. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element establishes local security and tenable defensive positions that provide early warning and protection from an enemy attack. The presence of the enemy is not a surprise. The only time restraints are those specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. The digital units submit reports and locations using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP). They maintain situational awareness (SA) to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a mission analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) If a maneuver force was providing security, the element followed procedures beginning with task step 4.</li> <li>(2) If the unit was working alone or in an isolated area, the element leader designated overwatch and reconnaissance or minesweeping teams and followed procedures beginning with task step 2.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element occupies a stationary overwatch position at the site. The overwatch team leader—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a covered and concealed position.</li> <li>b. Assigned a sector of observation and fire.</li> <li>c. Directed the overwatch team to use all available sights and other visual devices to scan the sector and identify enemy forces.</li> </ul> <p>3. The reconnaissance or minesweeping team secures the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the site.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Located, marked, and reported any mines or unexploded ordnance (UXO) on the site.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The chain of command reported the hazard to explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel for disposal.</b></p> <p>4. The element moves into and occupies the position after the site is clear.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader reconnoiters tentative fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified avenues of approach.</li> <li>b. Identified observation posts (OP) or patrol routes to secure the perimeter.</li> <li>c. Identified crew-served weapons positions.</li> <li>d. Established withdrawal routes.</li> <li>e. Identified dismounted personnel positions.</li> <li>f. Positioned vehicles in covered and concealed positions.</li> <li>g. Established sectors of fire and general positions for crew-served weapons and vehicles.</li> <li>h. Designated which fighting positions (OPs or patrols) would be manned full time.</li> <li>i. The patrol or OP team moved to an assigned position. The patrol or OP team— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Provided early-warning and close-in security.</li> <li>(2) Offered cover and concealment for occupants.</li> <li>(3) Established a concealed route leading to and away from the OP.</li> <li>(4) Operated according to the unit TACSOP or SOP until relieved.</li> <li>(5) Maintained communications with the command post.</li> </ul> </li> <li>j. Supervised the positioning of the chemical alarm. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Placed the alarm 150 meters upwind from the unit.</li> <li>(2) Ensured that the alarm was within visible site of the elements position to prevent it from being tampered with by the enemy.</li> <li>(3) Did not place the alarm in a depression.</li> <li>(4) Moved the chemical alarm if the wind shifted.</li> </ul> </li> <li>k. Subordinate leaders designated individual positions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated primary fighting positions.</li> <li>(2) Designated alternate fighting positions.</li> <li>(3) Established sectors of fire for each individual and ensured that individual range cards and element sector sketches were complete according to the unit TACSOP or SOP.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The unit TACSOP or SOP should have a set time standard for completing the range cards and sector sketches.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>l. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force and higher HQ.</li> <li>m. Emplaced protective obstacles, if required, based on the five-step risk management process.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The unit should establish alert procedures and rehearse the procedures on site with a 100 percent occupation of the position.</b></p> <p>6. The element begins work.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Kept individual weapons within close reach.</li> <li>b. Maintained noise and light discipline.</li> <li>c. Maintained camouflage procedures.</li> <li>d. Maintained the directed MOPP level.</li> <li>e. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force or higher HQ.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send reports and update the COP using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or FM means according to</b></p>		



<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
the unit TACSOP.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-0908	Conduct Quartering Party Operations
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Plan for Survivability Operations (05-2-0508)  
 (FM 5-103) (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) that is preparing for defensive operations. An engineer battlefield assessment (EBA) has been completed. The element leaders are participating in the maneuver TF planning process, and the course of action (COA) has been decided. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The survivability plan supports the TF commander's concept and is integrated with the obstacle plan. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander or the executive officer (XO) coordinates for survivability operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated the linkup time and location and the call signs and frequency with the supported units.</li> <li>b. Coordinated for and acquired air defense artillery (ADA) coverage.</li> <li>c. Determined the critical friendly zones (CFZs).</li> <li>d. Obtained Class III support.</li> <li>e. Ensured the availability of the casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader determines the requirements for the types and numbers of survivability positions based on the COA of the TF.</li> <li>* 3. The element leader determines construction capabilities.</li> <li>* 4. The element leader identifies capabilities versus the requirements to determine shortfalls and informs the supported unit commander of these shortfalls.</li> <li>* 5. The element leader recommends priorities and task organization to the maneuver commander.</li> <li>* 6. The commander or XO prepares the survivability plan and matrix and issues orders to the subordinates.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Conduct Breaching Operations (05-2-1003)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is performing tactical operations in a contemporary operating environment. The engineer company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) with an established command or support relationship. The TF has the mission of conducting breaching operations and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company creates lanes through obstacles where directed by the TF commander to maintain the momentum of the attack. The element enforces standards to minimize loss of personnel or equipment. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader conducts the military decision-making process (MDMP) with an emphasis on preparing for breaching operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified personnel and equipment needed, and task-organized subordinate elements to reduce obstacles in support of the attack.</li> <li>b. Rehearsed the mission with element leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that each element understood its mission.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the equipment of the breaching element was checked for serviceability and had everything specified in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP), including those items required for the specific mission.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: An engineer company may require augmentation with additional equipment (up to two additional platoons) to support the deliberate attack.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Identified engineer-required Class V munitions and requested the munitions through the maneuver unit, if applicable, based on the command or support relationship.</li> <li>f. Task-organized the company and equipment to support the mission, identifying the engineer support needed for the breach, support, and assault force, with priority to the breach force.</li> <li>g. Coordinated with the maneuver commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) to place the unit in the TF formation.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The engineer leadership must be very familiar with the maneuver unit tactical SOP (TACSOP).</b></p> <p>2. The breaching engineer element conducts actions in the assembly area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed precombat checks with special emphasis on reduction assets.</li> <li>b. Linked up with the supported units, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Conducted detailed rehearsals with the supported units if time permitted.</li> </ul> <p>3. The breaching engineer element moves with the maneuver unit to the last covered and concealed location before the obstacle.</p> <p>4. The engineer element takes action as directed by the maneuver commander according to the maneuver unit TACSOP.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. The element leader positions subordinate breaching elements well forward and integrates them into the breach and assault-force combat formations. The element leader anticipates locations and/or events where engineer support is essential.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader anticipates obstacle locations based on the engineer battlefield assessment (EBA).</p> <p>7. The engineer element supports the breaching operation.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader directs the subordinate engineer elements to conduct an enemy obstacle reconnaissance.</p> <p>* 9. The element leader advises the maneuver commander on the best location to bypass or reduce the obstacle.</p> <p>10. The company supports the breach and assault forces with priority given to the breach force. The company may provide limited support to allow the support force to move into an overwatch position.</p> <p>*11. The element leader directs the subordinate engineer element, which supports the breach force, to reduce the tactical obstacles along the attack axis. The element is prepared to support both mounted and dismounted attacks.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Maintained a minimum of one lane per assault company or two lanes per TF.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Created the lane in 10 minutes or less when personnel and equipment were exposed to direct and/or observed indirect fire.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The above 10 minutes refers to the time allowed to reduce the obstacle or to create the lane. It is the maximum time permitted for personnel and equipment to remain exposed in front of the obstacle. No time standard is established either during covert breaching operations or when the unit is not under enemy fire.</b></p> <p>*12. The element leader retains the ability to reinforce or supplement the efforts of the forward platoons.</p> <p>13. The engineer breach element marks the lane according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>*14. The breaching engineer element leader reports to higher headquarters (HQ) on the location of the lane according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>15. The company prepares to continue the mission.</p> <p>*16. The element leader reports the location of the lane and/or obstacle to higher HQ according to the unit TACSOP.</p> <p>17. The company conducts a lane or obstacle hand over.</p> <p>*18. The engineer element leader directs a subordinate engineer element to remain at the lane or obstacle to hand it over to the follow-on engineer unit.</p> <p>19. The company supports the maneuver unit assault on the objective.</p> <p><b>NOTE: In digital units, the element leader populates the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the locations of lanes and/or obstacles to provide the maneuver unit and follow-on forces with situational awareness (SA) according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-3060	Conduct a Breach of a Minefield
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations
052-194-4007	Execute a Complex Obstacle Breach

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0721	Plan/Control Augmentation Support
05-2-1126	Coordinate for Organizational Maintenance Support

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations (05-2-1005)  
 (FM 20-32) (DA FORM 1355) (FM 5-34)  
 (STANAG 2036)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer element is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment and receives the directive to perform a minefield clearance. The area is secure and enemy fire is unlikely. The equipment that is assigned to the company is in serviceable condition and has enough demolitions to accomplish the mission. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element removes or destroys all mines. The element enforces standards to minimize the loss of personnel or equipment. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader verifies critical data from a minefield record, if available.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the minefield location.</li> <li>b. Confirmed the number and type of mines (antitank [AT] or antipersonnel [AP]).</li> <li>c. Verified minefield boundaries.</li> <li>d. Verified the number of rows and the location of landmarks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader organizes the company for clearance operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established a marking party for the minefield boundaries, if not previously marked.</li> <li>b. Designated personnel to operate control points at the rear of the minefield.</li> <li>c. Designated personnel to operate a mine dump, if friendly mines were recovered.</li> <li>d. Established minesweeping teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader directs the locating and marking of all mines and lanes.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigned start points (SPs) and areas to clear to a minimum width of 25 meters and the full depth of the minefield.</li> <li>b. Ensured that mines were marked as soon as they were identified.</li> <li>c. Ensured that mine detector operators were at least 30 meters apart at all times, swept a 1.5-meter path, and were relieved every 20 minutes.</li> <li>d. Deployed the teams in an echelon formation.</li> <li>e. Ensured that lanes were marked as the sweep teams proceeded down them.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The element destroys all of the mines in place.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detonated all foreign mines, United States (US) mines with antihandling devices (AHDs), booby traps, and mines that had been in control of enemy forces.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Located and marked the mines.</li> <li>(2) Placed a 1-pound block of explosives primed with detonating cord directly next to each mine.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Used a line or ring main to detonate emplaced charges, either collectively or individually.</p> <p>(4) Ensured detonation did not take place until all personnel had exited the minefield to a safe distance or area.</p> <p>b. Requested assistance from explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel, if the foreign mines required recovery by hand.</p> <p>5. The element proofs the minefield with electronic detectors, mine detection dogs, mine rollers, or other expedient methods to ensure that all the mines are recovered or destroyed.</p> <p>* 6. The element leaders ensure that unit members follow safety considerations.</p> <p>a. Ensured that unit members left metal objects outside the minefield when the use of magnetically influenced fuzes was known or suspected.</p> <p>b. Ensured that sweep-team members wore protective clothing, such as a body armored set, individual countermine (BASIC); helmet; and a flak vest.</p> <p>c. Ensured that unit members did not run in the minefield.</p> <p>d. Advised the members to assume that all of the mines were equipped with AHDs.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader ensures that all of the required reports are sent to higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>a. Ensured that the status of progress reports was sent according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</p> <p>b. Ensured that the completion report was sent according to the unit SOP.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units update the common operational picture (COP) as the minefields are cleared, send reports, and provide updated situational awareness (SA) as required in the unit tactical SOP (TACSOP).</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1127	Prepare an AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector for Operation
052-192-2084	Direct a Mine Clearing Line Charge Loading Team
052-192-3050	Direct a Mine-Sweeping Party
052-192-3129	Direct the Removal of a Row Minefield
052-192-3177	Supervise Mine Clearing Line Charge (MCLIC) Operations
052-192-4045	Conduct Route Sweep Operations
052-192-4052	Supervise Minefield Clearing Operations
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations
052-192-4102	Supervise the Removal of Row Minefields
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires



**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0112	Emplace a Tactical Minefield
05-3-0116	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Company

**TASK:** Plan and Control Tactical Obstacles (05-2-2013)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a contemporary operating environment and is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF). The TF is preparing for defensive operations. Obstacle and survivability plans are approved. The company commander has task-organized the engineer assets needed to emplace directed obstacles. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The obstacles are correctly sited, built to standard, and handed over to maneuver forces according to the established timelines. The digital units send and receive information using frequency-modulated (FM) and digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander conducts a missions analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the facts and developed assumptions.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the higher HQ mission and the commander's intent.</li> <li>c. Analyzed the relative combat power.</li> <li>d. Issued the commander's guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The staff develops a course of action (COA.)                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a fires analysis.</li> <li>b. Developed an obstacle intent integration.</li> <li>c. Directed obstacle priorities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The staff conducts a COA analysis.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed enemy reactions at obstacle groups versus the desired obstacle effect.</li> <li>b. Planned obstacle locations that inhibit friendly maneuver.</li> <li>c. Determined compatible obstacle effects and weapon system capabilities.</li> <li>d. Planned adequate fire-control measures to support obstacle effect.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The staff war-games and adjusts the COA.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Changed locations of directed obstacle groups, if required.</li> <li>b. Changed the obstacle effect at a specific location, if required.</li> <li>c. Identified other mobility requirements, if required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. The company commander issues the decision and execution guidance.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued a scheme-of-obstacles overlay.</li> <li>b. Issued an obstacle-execution matrix.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Assigned zone, belt, or group designation and individual obstacle numbers.</p> <p>(2) Provided location, grid coordinates or a center of mass grid for the group, start and end points of the group trace, or grid coordinates for individual obstacles, if known.</p> <p>(3) Identified effects of the obstacle group.</p> <p>(4) Provided priorities for the obstacle group.</p> <p>(5) Assigned the emplacing and owning unit.</p> <p>(6) Provided the location of any lanes and closure instructions or reference to a reserve-obstacle matrix, if appropriate.</p> <p>(7) Allocated materials or assets for the group</p> <p>(8) Assigned the location of the obstacle materials (the Class IV and Class V point or other site).</p> <p>* 6. The company commander supervises an obstacle emplacement.</p> <p>a. Ensured that fire support targets were refined.</p> <p>b. Coordinated for critical friendly zones (CFZs).</p> <p>c. Coordinated for air defense artillery (ADA) coverage.</p> <p>d. Coordinated the linkups between the engineer elements and the supported units.</p> <p>e. Briefed the element leader on the intent of the obstacle group, to include a tentative obstacle group design.</p> <p>f. Informed the element leader on the type of mine distribution method to use.</p> <p>g. Provided the element leader with a timeline for countermobility efforts.</p> <p>h. Coordinated for maneuver support to assist in the obstacle emplacement.</p> <p>7. The company command post (CP) monitors the obstacle emplacement.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units report the locations of the completed obstacles, populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the locations of the obstacles, and send status reports and requests according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</b></p> <p>a. Monitored the progress, reported the status, and adjusted the execution matrix, as required.</p> <p>b. Tracked the turnover of the completed obstacles to the overwatching maneuver units.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2083	Perform Troubleshooting Procedures on a Volcano
052-192-3125	Direct a Row Minefield Siting Party

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-1035	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Fire Support (FS) Planning Process
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-0126	Provide Support for Countermobility Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Company  
 Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Control Construction of Survivability Positions (05-2-3000)  
 (FM 5-103)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, the company receives an operations order (OPORD) to construct survivability positions in support of the maneuver task force (TF) that is preparing defensive positions. Survivability and obstacle plans have been formulated. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The survivability plan is executed and fighting and protective positions are constructed to standard according to the priorities and timelines. The digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander issues an OPORD that contains the survivability plan and timeline.  <b>NOTE: The digital units send orders and reports and update positions on the common operational picture (COP) using digital means according to the unit tactical operations center standing operating procedure (TOCSOP).</b></p> <p>* 2. The element commander supervises coordination with the maneuver commanders and on-site engineer officers in charge (OICs) or noncommissioned officers in charge (NCOICs) to determine the physical location of direct- and indirect-fire weapons systems and other TF assets that require protection.</p> <p>* 3. The element commander supervises the execution of the survivability matrix, adjusts the plan as necessary, and coordinates any changes with the supported unit commander.</p> <p>4. The command post (CP) reports the status of the construction of survivability positions to the engineer battalion and the maneuver TF.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-4009	Determine Logistical Requirements for Nonexplosive Antivehicular Obstacles
052-195-4060	Supervise the Construction of a Defensive Perimeter

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Disable Critical Equipment and Material (05-3-0210)  
 (FM 5-250) (TM 750-244-2) (TM 750-244-3)  
 (TM 750-244-6) (TM 750-244-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, an enemy assault penetrates the position of the element. The element leader is ordered to evacuate the position and disable items of equipment that the platoon cannot haul or move. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element evacuates the position and disables all critical items that cannot be hauled or moved. The digital units send and receive reports via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader prioritizes the equipment to be disabled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used information in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Identified critical equipment as communication assets (radios and keying material), transportation assets (tracked and wheeled vehicles and construction equipment), barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives), and weapons systems.</li> <li>c. Prioritized the disabling of the equipment based on its value to the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader determines the method for disabling tracked and wheeled vehicles, including the construction equipment, and directs unit members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements, such as the gearbox, the starter, the battery, the engine block, the transmission, the instrument panel, and the communications equipment.</li> <li>b. Drained the hydraulic system and cut the hoses.</li> <li>c. Used explosives to disable transportation assets, such as tracked or wheeled vehicles and trailers.</li> <li>d. Used a bayonet or another cutting tool to slash all tires.</li> <li>e. Drained the oil and ran the engine until it seized.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader determines the method for disabling the communications equipment and directs the unit members.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Smashed vital elements using an ax, a pick, a sledgehammer, or any heavy implement. Smashed all dials, knobs, and gauges and demolished all antennas.</li> <li>b. Used explosives to disable the communications equipment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The element leader determines the amount of barrier material (mines, wire, and explosives) to use, and destroys the remaining items with explosives.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. The element leader determines the method for disabling an organic bridge with demolitions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Considered whether to use partial or complete destruction.</li> <li>b. Considered the quantity and type of explosive.</li> <li>c. Considered whether to use an electric or nonelectric firing system.</li> <li>d. Considered what the appropriate time would be to disable or demolish the bridge.</li> <li>e. Considered the method of coordination to use with adjacent forces.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element members disable critical equipment during the evacuation according to the plan of the element leader.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader submits status reports to the company according to the unit SOP.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-193-2014	Determine the Safe Distance When Firing Explosives
052-193-2016	Place Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3054	Prepare a Demolition Reconnaissance Report
052-193-4040	Manage Engineer Demolition Missions

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Obstacle Section  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Emplace a Standardized Tactical Row Minefield (05-3-2010)  
 (FM 20-32) (DA FORM 1355) (FM 5-10)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 90-7) (STANAG 2036)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to emplace a standardized tactical row minefield in a contemporary operating environment. The maneuver commander has determined the location, type, and composition of the minefield. Mines and antihandling devices (AHDs) are available. The maneuver commander will provide the security element. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element emplaces a standardized tactical row minefield tied to existing or reinforcing obstacles. The locations are accurate to within 10 meters. Camouflaged mines are not detectable from 15 meters. The element submits reports and Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355. The element completes the minefield within the time specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to emplace a standardized tactical row minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and terrain.</li> <li>b. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>c. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the minefield.</li> <li>d. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>f. Conducted a risk management assessment and a safety briefing according to the unit TACSOP or SOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element conducts a reconnaissance of the minefield location and coordinates with the maneuver force on the exact location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the maneuver force covered the minefield by direct or observed indirect fire.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the final location was tied to existing obstacles.</li> <li>c. Determined the approximate locations for the mine strips, landmarks, fences, approaches, and mine dumps.</li> <li>d. Selected movement routes.</li> <li>e. Established local security.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The element leader calculates the man-hours and the logistical requirements (if standard-row minefield designs are not used) and arranges for the mines to be drawn from supply.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Calculated the number of mines.</li> <li>b. Calculated the number of rows (depending on the effect).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Calculated the number of AHDs.</li> <li>d. Calculated the number of man-hours needed to install the minefield.</li> <li>e. Calculated the amount of fencing and marking material.</li> <li>f. Calculated the number of trips needed to transport the mines.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader reports, by secure means, to higher headquarters (HQ) or the supported maneuver unit HQ of the intention to lay mines (if required).</p> <p>* 5. The element leader organizes the element into four parties: siting and recording, laying, marking, and mine dump.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized the siting and recording party.</li> <li>b. Organized the laying party.</li> <li>c. Organized the marking party.</li> <li>d. Organized the mine-dump party.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element assembles all equipment and material to emplace the minefield during daylight or with limited visibility.</p> <p>* 7. The element leader reports to higher HQ or the supported maneuver unit HQ that the element has initiated emplacement. The report includes the time, location, and target number.</p> <p>8. The element establishes a mine dump on the friendly side of the minefield.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a level site with adequate access for vehicles.</li> <li>b. Spaced the mine dumps 150 meters apart and 50 meters behind the minefield. Mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) was moved accordingly, as needed.</li> <li>c. Uncrated and stacked the antitank (AT) mines.</li> <li>d. Removed the lids on the remaining mine crates, but did not remove additional mines from the crates.</li> <li>e. Placed the fuzes and the detonators in separate boxes.</li> </ul> <p>9. The siting and recording party performs the following operations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected landmark 1 and sited the left or right boundary fence and the start row markers.</li> <li>b. Recorded the distances and the azimuths used in preparing the minefield record.</li> <li>c. Proceeded across the irregular outer edge (IOE) and established I1, I1E, I2, I2E, and so on until reaching the end.</li> <li>d. Proceeded down the right or left boundary fence and emplaced the A1 start row marker. Proceeded from A1 to A2 then placed the intermediate markers, as needed, and ended with the end row marker at A2.</li> <li>e. Designated the minefield lanes and at least three rows.</li> <li>f. Repeated the procedure in performance measure 10d to emplace B1 to B2, C1 to C2, and so on until all of the required control measures were emplaced.</li> <li>g. Established landmark 2 and the left or right rear fence.</li> </ul> <p>10. The marking party emplaces the fence post, wire, and marking signs.</p> <p>11. The laying party performs the following operations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assembled a guide for mine spacing.</li> <li>b. Proceeded down the row in the vehicle following the shotgun or track commander (TC) or the intermediate row markers.</li> <li>c. Transferred the mines from the vehicle and carefully laid them on the ground.</li> <li>d. Fuzed the mines.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Armed the mines and recovered the row markers.</p> <p>12. The marking party installs the minefield fence.</p> <p>*13. The element leader completes a minefield record with the required information.</p> <p>*14. The element leader submits a minimum of four copies of a completed minefield record.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Reviewed the minefield record for correctness, ensured that the form was marked with the correct classification, and signed the form.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The minefield record should be marked with one of the following classifications: SECRET; NORTH ATLANTIC TREATY ORGANIZATION (NATO) SECRET; SECRET-Republic of Korea, United States (ROKUS); or SAMPLE.</b></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Submitted a copy of the completed minefield record to the overwatch unit and higher HQ, or the supported maneuver unit HQ as soon as possible.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Submitted a copy of the completed minefield record to the unit central control cell (for mine clearance information) and the proper national territorial authority.</p> <p>*15. The element leader submits a report of completion, usually orally, to the authorizing commander and then immediately submits a completed minefield record.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1105	Install an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M624 Fuze
052-192-1106	Remove an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine With the M624 Fuze
052-192-1107	Install an M15 Antitank (AT) Mine Using the M603 Fuze
052-192-1109	Install an M19 Antitank (AT) Mine
052-192-1117	Install an M21 Antitank (AT) Mine

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Emplace a Volcano Minefield (05-3-2011)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)  
 (FM 5-34) (STANAG 2036)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a contemporary operating environment and receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to emplace a scatterable minefield in support of a maneuver unit. The maneuver commander has provided the intent, type, location, composition, and means of delivery (air or ground). The security element has been coordinated. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element emplaces a tactical minefield (tied to existing or reinforced obstacles) to disrupt, turn, fix, or block to channel, or delay the enemy. The locations are accurate to within 10 meters. The digital units submit reports and locations of obstacles via frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and standardization agreements (STANAGs). Department of the Army (DA) forms are completed and submitted according to the STANAG. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The digital units request intelligence information from the All Source Analysis System (ASAS) and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ) before the mission. Nondigital units request information from the higher HQ Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader prepares a plan for the emplacement of a Volcano minefield.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit.</li> <li>b. Designated a tow vehicle.</li> <li>c. Conducted a thorough map, aerial, or ground reconnaissance for the location of the minefield and routes (primary and alternate).</li> <li>d. Issued the intent of the minefield.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Disrupt.</li> <li>(2) Fix.</li> <li>(3) Turn.</li> <li>(4) Block.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Conducted troop-leading procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader and the reconnaissance element verify the minefield location, confirm the intent (as appropriate for the location), and tie into existing terrain.</li> <li>* 3. The element reconnoiters the start and end points of the minefield.</li> <li>4. The element identifies the centerline.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked the disrupt or fix Volcano minefield.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Placed guide markers offset to the left of the centerline path.</p> <p>(2) Placed marking material visible to the emplacing vehicle operator until the end point was reached (277 meters for ground Volcano and 278 meters air Volcano).</p> <p>b. Marked the turn or block Volcano minefield.</p> <p>(1) Placed guide markers offset to the left of the centerline path.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Turn and block Volcano minefields require two strip centerlines and are separated by at least 320 meters for both ground and air delivery to achieve step 4b(2).</b></p> <p>(2) Placed marking material visible to the emplacing vehicle operator until the end point is reached (555 meters for ground Volcano and 557 meters for air Volcano).</p> <p>5. The element marks the perimeter of the Volcano minefield(s) being deployed.</p> <p><b>NOTE: When minefields are behind the forward line of own troops (FLOT) (in the main battle or rear area), mark the minefield on all four sides. Minefields forward of the FLOT generally are not marked.</b></p> <p>a. Marked a safety zone with marking material 40 meters from the start and end points and 80 meters from the left and right of the centerline.</p> <p>b. Marked the pickets for night operations.</p> <p>* 6. The element leader verifies that the overwatching unit is in position to provide security to the emplacing unit or provides security with platoon personnel.</p> <p>* 7. The emplacement team leader performs a built-in test (BIT) and the element leader verifies the correct self-destruct time.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader submits a scatterable-minefield warning (SCATMINWARN) 30 minutes before the emplacement time to higher HQ according to Field Manual 20-32.</p> <p>9. The element emplaces the minefield.</p> <p>a. Activated the dispenser control unit (DCU) to begin dispersing the Volcano mines at the start point.</p> <p>b. Ensured that the Volcano mines are being properly dispersed and that the driver maintains the set speed and line with the centerline markers until the vehicle reaches the end point.</p> <p>c. Ceased dispensing mines at the designated end point of the minefield.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The emplacement team must move away from the minefield within 4 minutes to avoid being in the fragment hazard zone during mine detonations that fail the arming sequence.</b></p> <p>*10. The element leader conducts obstacle turnover with the overwatching element.</p> <p>*11. The element leader submits a scatterable-minefield record (SCATMINREC) to higher HQ.</p> <p>12. The element moves to a safe location and prepares for follow-on missions.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send information using text messaging, updating digital overlays with obstacle locations, and transmitting updated reports using the appropriate battle command system according to the unit TACSOP. Nondigital units transmit information to higher HQ by FM means according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-2077	Operate a Ground Volcano System
052-192-2080	Perform Volcano Bit and Arm Tests
052-192-2081	Perform a Volcano Mine Canister Test
052-192-2082	Operate a Volcano Dispenser Control Unit
052-192-2083	Perform Troubleshooting Procedures on a Volcano
052-192-3137	Direct a Row Minefield Laying Party
052-192-3140	Direct the Mounting of a Volcano Dispenser on a Ground Vehicle
052-192-3142	Direct the Operation of a Ground Volcano System
052-192-3165	Supervise the Installation of a Volcano Minefield
052-192-3166	Supervise Installation of a Modular-Pack Mine System (MOPMS) Minefield
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-4-1372	Disseminate Terrain Information Product

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)  
 (FM 24-35-1) (TC 24-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) mission requiring the unit to provide its own security and defense. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements, consisting of as much as a motorized rifle company or airborne equivalent, have been active in friendly rear areas. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element completes all preparations for the defense within the time specified by the OPORD. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The company is not surprised by the OPFOR, suffers no casualties from friendly fire, and repels the OPFOR attacks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE: The elements execute the following tasks when the company is performing this task: Establish Unit Defense, Defend the Unit Position, Construct a Protective Obstacle, and Conduct Hasty Minefield Operations.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander develops a defensive plan according to the OPORD or the FRAGO.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established sectors or boundaries for the subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Assigned battle positions for the company elements.</li> <li>c. Designated primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</li> <li>d. Designated engagement areas (EAs).</li> <li>e. Developed the fire support (FS) plan, including the target reference points (TRPs) forward, within, and to the rear of the defensive position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance with key company leaders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established local security.</li> <li>b. Confirmed or modified his plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Leaders survey the terrain to finalize their defensive plans.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the covered and concealed routes to and between all positions.</li> <li>b. Identified all avenues of approach (AAs).</li> <li>c. Identified dead space.</li> <li>d. Requested indirect FS to cover the dead space and the likely AAs.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Digital units request indirect FS using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or FM means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Identified locations for the company command post (CP), observation posts (OPs), the supply point, and the company casualty collection point.</li> <li>f. Identified potential landing zones (LZs) that the enemy could use for an air assault.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The commander designates unit positions or sectors.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concentrated fire on the most dangerous and most likely AAs.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Selected positions with good fields of fire and observation of enemy ground and air forces.</li> <li>c. Provided cover and concealment.</li> <li>d. Permitted adequate lateral and in-depth dispersion.</li> </ul> <p>5. The company establishes unit security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established the OPs and the air guards.</li> <li>b. Conducted patrols in areas that could not be observed.</li> <li>c. Emplaced early-warning devices.</li> <li>d. Conducted stand-to procedures according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or order.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Leaders position key weapons and establish fields of fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented the units to provide all-around security.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the weapons covered the most dangerous AAs, EAs, or selected kill zones based on the defensive technique.</li> <li>c. Effected mutual support between elements.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the antiarmor weapons covered the likely armor AAs.</li> <li>e. Registered indirect fire and final protection fires (FPFs) on the most dangerous dismounted AAs, where possible.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. Leaders check the position for potential problems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Walked the positions and adjusted for fields of fire.</li> <li>b. Walked the terrain in front of the positions to determine if personnel accomplished their assigned tasks.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The leaders coordinate with flank elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy AAs.</li> <li>b. Exchanged information on the OP locations, patrols, unit signals, and passage points.</li> </ul> <p>9. The commander coordinated a withdrawal plan.</p> <p>10. The company establishes communications, if available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used wire as the primary communications, if available.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communication with the OPs, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and FS team.</li> <li>c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications equipment was operational.</li> <li>d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications.</li> </ul> <p>11. The company emplaces minefields and obstacles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requested and received clearance to lay protective minefields.</li> <li>b. Emplaced mines or obstacles according to the company obstacle plan and recorded the minefield on the standard minefield form.</li> <li>c. Covered mines or obstacles by observation and direct and indirect fires.</li> <li>d. Reported the location of mines or obstacles to all elements, and forwarded the standard minefield record to the next higher command as soon as possible.</li> </ul> <p>12. The company defends against an enemy assault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detected and reported enemy contact by the OPs.</li> <li>b. Withdrew the OPs on order or according to the company SOP.</li> <li>c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements closed to within range of each individual or the weapons system.</li> </ul> <p>*13. The commander or forward observer (FO) defends against an enemy assault.</p>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Called for and engaged the attacking force with indirect fire according to the company SOP.</p> <p>b. Requested FPF from the supporting indirect-fire units as the enemy neared the final protective line (FPL).</p> <p>*14. The commander defends against an enemy assault.</p> <p>a. Initiated direct-fire engagement of the attacking force according to the unit SOP.</p> <p>b. Executed the obstacle plan according to the battalion OPORD or FRAGO.</p> <p>c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements closed to within range of additional weapons.</p> <p>15. The company consolidates and reorganizes during lulls in the fighting.</p> <p>a. Executed platoon consolidation and reorganization.</p> <p>b. Treated and evacuated casualties.</p> <p>c. Transmitted the status report, and requested replacement personnel.</p> <p>d. Requested resupply.</p> <p>e. Replaced damaged barriers and obstacles.</p> <p>f. Restored communication.</p> <p>g. Repositioned the OPs that were withdrawn during the engagement.</p> <p>h. Resumed security and patrolling activities.</p> <p>16. The company continues to defend.</p> <p>a. Forced the enemy to withdraw.</p> <p>b. Disengaged by order of higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>c. Ordered the reposition of platoons to alternate or supplementary positions as needed.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0510	Direct Survivability Construction
05-2-0518	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-3-0115.05-R01A	Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-3-0116	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-3-0230	Construct a Protective Obstacle
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-4-0110.05-R01A	Mark a Minefield
05-6-0094	Plan Engineer Survivability Operations
19-1-2001	Coordinate Area Security Operations
19-1-2203	Direct Site Security Operations
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element recognizes the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the UXO by type.</li> <li>b. Identified the UXO by subgroup.</li> <li>c. Observed all safety precautions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evacuated the area as appropriate.</li> <li>b. Determined the appropriate action.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Avoided the UXO hazard.</li> <li>(2) Instituted protective measures.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose leaders to mark the area.</li> <li>b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The element marks the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Marked all the logical approach routes.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the UXO was visible from all markers.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The element reports the UXO hazard.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiated the UXO spot report.</li> <li>b. Determined the priority based on the current situation.</li> <li>c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.30) (FM 3-19.4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An opposing forces (OPFOR) squad-size patrol attempts reconnaissance or intrusion into the command post (CP) perimeter. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element maintains 24-hour security in its assigned sector and is not surprised by the OPFOR.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares a physical security plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled the entry of vehicles into the CP.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures for selecting and manning perimeter positions.</li> <li>c. Developed procedures for detecting and reporting OPFOR intrusion or observation of the CP perimeter.</li> <li>d. Controlled access to the element defensive areas.</li> <li>e. Established communications links between observation posts (OPs) and the reaction force.</li> <li>f. Developed procedures for initial response to ground attacks.</li> </ul> 2. The element operates a guard force. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established communications with the guard commander.</li> <li>b. Stopped unauthorized entry into restricted areas.</li> <li>c. Conducted random exterior patrols to find and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breached the CP perimeter.</li> </ul> 3. The element reacts to an OPFOR ground attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumed preplanned positions.</li> <li>b. Denied intrusion into the CP perimeter.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)  
 (FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)  
 (FM 44-80)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The element weapon control status (WCS) is weapons hold. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The opposing forces (OPFOR) element aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, and UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide personnel and equipment to limit vulnerability.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The unit achieves air situational awareness (SA) by monitoring with simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.</li> <li>c. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms.</li> <li>d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to an air attack.</li> <li>e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.</li> <li>f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Established a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if the equipment was available and operational.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing.</li> <li>b. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment before moving out.</li> <li>c. Selected a column interval based on instructions, the mission, and the terrain.</li> <li>d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank).</li> <li>e. Assigned soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360°.</li> <li>f. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ).</li> <li>h. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. Element personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing a position. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order.</li> <li>b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns.</li> <li>c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360°, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement.</li> <li>d. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>e. Reported all aircraft actions to higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)

(FM 44-100)  
 (FM 44-80)

(FM 44-64)

(FM 44-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms. The element is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is weapons tight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Organized the element to defensive positions.</li> <li>c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms.</li> <li>d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to higher headquarters (HQ).</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, consider the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The element must positively and visually identify aerial platforms before engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.</b></p> <p><b>DANGER: MUNITIONS CANNOT DISTINGUISH BETWEEN FRIEND AND FOE. REVIEW ALL AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURES. PERFORM ALL PRECAUTIONARY MEASURES TO ENSURE THAT THE MUNITIONS FIRED DO NOT CAUSE INJURY OR DEATH TO FRIENDLY FORCES OR DAMAGE TO ALLIED EQUIPMENT. EVEN COMPUTERIZED SYSTEMS REQUIRE CLOSE OBSERVATION.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Made the engagement decision.</li> <li>f. Engaged the element in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the element position.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO																					
<p>h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement. i. Sent the PIR to higher HQ.</p> <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <p><b>1. Aim points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters.</b></p> <p><b>2. Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals about 91 meters.</b></p> <p><b>3. Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.</b></p> <p><b>4. Establish preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.</b></p> <p><b>5. Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire (a coordinated, high volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through) will achieve the desired results.</b></p> <table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th>TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS</th> <th>COURSE</th> <th>AIM POINT</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Overhead</td> <td>Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jet/cruise missile</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Crossing</td> <td>One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Directly at you</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Helicopter/UAV</td> <td>Hovering</td> <td>Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by the unit commander.</p> <p>* 2. Leaders direct small arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit.</li> <li>c. Moved vehicles to covered and concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion.</li> <li>d. Engaged nonattacking aircraft only as directed.</li> <li>e. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.</li> <li>f. Reported all aerial platform actions to higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Prepared the element to engage on orders of the senior leader.</li> <li>h. Engaged the element (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms.</li> <li>i. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> </ol> <p>* 3. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gave the air attack alarm.</li> <li>b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</li> <li>c. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> </ol>	TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT	Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose	Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose	Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body	Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body		
TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS	COURSE	AIM POINT																					
Jet/cruise missile	Crossing	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Overhead	Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Jet/cruise missile	Directly at you	Slightly above the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Crossing	One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose																					
Helicopter/UAV	Directly at you	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					
Helicopter/UAV	Hovering	Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body																					

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Ensured that soldiers assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors.</li> <li>e. Reported any aircraft action to higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Evaluated the situation and moved the element position as directed by the tactical situation or the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader or noncommissioned officers (NCOs) direct small arms air defense measures during the convoy movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack.</li> <li>b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road or off the road if possible. Turned to covered and concealed positions, if the terrain permitted.</li> <li>c. Maintained vehicle intervals or increased the interval or dispersion by using evasive driving techniques.</li> <li>d. Ordered the element to dismount and take up firing positions.</li> <li>e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking.</li> <li>f. Identified aerial platforms.</li> <li>g. Engaged the element in attacking aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns.</li> <li>h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.</li> <li>i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to higher HQ.</li> <li>j. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)  
 (AR 385-10) (FM 3-0) (FM 7-0)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is deployed, performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Leaders and soldiers are aware of potential safety problems when conducting the task. The element trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger element members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for specified and implied missions (tasks).</li> <li>b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process.</li> <li>c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the mission or conditions changed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent, based on the stated training objective.</li> <li>b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents.</li> <li>c. Described the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk.</li> <li>d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The commander (or leaders) eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk.</li> <li>b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards.</li> <li>c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment.</li> <li>d. Briefed the elements before all operations.</li> </ul> <p>4. The element carries out safety procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Received safety briefings before all operations.</li> <li>b. Practiced the safety procedures during all mission rehearsals.</li> <li>c. Made on-spot safety corrections.</li> </ul>		
<p><b>NOTES:</b>  <b>1. Safety is a part of realism, and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
nature during war (refer to Field Manual [FM] 7-0). 2. FM 3-0 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Manage Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)/Field Trains (05-1-0009)

(FM 100-10)	(FM 100-13)	(FM 100-16)
(FM 10-23-1)	(FM 10-27)	(FM 10-27-1)
(FM 10-27-4)	(FM 1-05)	(FM 10-52)
(FM 11-41)	(FM 11-50)	(FM 14-100)
(FM 4-02)	(FM 4-30.13)	(FM 4-30.3)
(FM 5-100)	(FM 55-1)	(FM 5-71-100)
(FM 5-71-2)	(FM 5-71-3)	(FM 63-1)
(FM 63-11)	(FM 63-2)	(FM 63-20)
(FM 63-21)	(FM 63-3)	(FM 8-10-6)
(FM 8-51)	(FM 8-55)	(FM 9-43-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer element is providing support to a maneuver task force in a contemporary operating environment. The element conducts combat service support (CSS) operations using echelon trains. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The ALOC and/or field trains coordinate CSS requirements with the forward support battalion (FSB) and the maneuver brigade Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). The logistics packages (LOGPACs) are assembled with all of the required resupply items and dispatched forward as directed by the battalion S4. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The Adjutant (US Army) (S1) and S4 plan ALOC and/or field trains operations.</p> <p>* 2. The headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) commander positions the ALOC and/or field trains with the FSB and coordinates security.</p> <p>3. The ALOC and/or field trains coordinate for CSS. Coordinated with—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The brigade.</li> <li>b. The FSB, to include pickup and delivery.</li> <li>c. The attached or supported units for support requirements.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units use the Combat Service Support Control System (CSSCS) to send requests.</b></p> <p>* 4. The HHC commander coordinates and assembles the LOGPACs.</p> <p>* 5. The HHC commander supervises the battalion personnel that are operating in the field trains.</p> <p>6. The ALOC and/or field trains control traffic forward to the combat trains.</p> <p>7. The ALOC and/or field trains maintain communications.</p> <p>8. The ALOC and/or field trains process incoming personnel.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Perform Administrative Operations (05-1-7001)  
 (FM 12-6) (DA FORM 1155) (DA FORM 1156)  
 (DA FORM 2166-8) (DA FORM 2166-8-1) (DA FORM 67-9)  
 (FM 21-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is in a contemporary operating environment. The company headquarters (HQ) has all assigned personnel, equipment, required forms, manuals, and standing operating procedures (SOPs). Newly assigned personnel arrived for processing. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company integrates replacement personnel. The company prepares and submits personnel reports and actions while sustaining operations and providing for the discipline, health, welfare, and morale of all assigned personnel. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander integrates replacement personnel and assigns them to subordinate elements within the company.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Oriented replacement personnel before their assignment.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the unit mission and the current situation.</li> <li>(2) Explained the chain-of-command procedures.</li> <li>(3) Explained the warning system and the safety and security procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Assigned replacement personnel on a priority basis.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Company personnel prepare a personnel daily summary (PDS).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated the subordinate element data.</li> <li>b. Prepared the PDS.</li> <li>c. Submitted the PDS to the battalion personnel and administration center (PAC).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Company personnel process witness statements on individuals and casualty feeder reports.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posted and maintained the unit casualty record.</li> <li>b. Posted and maintained casualty feeder reports.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Company leaders in the chain-of-command review and verify the completed witness statements on individuals, and submit the reports to the battalion PAC.</li> <li>* 5. Company leaders initiate actions to request awards or promotions.</li> <li>* 6. Company leaders coordinate individual requests for administrative actions requiring approval from higher HQ.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adhered to the local battalion PAC policies.</li> <li>b. Relayed all duty statuses and other actions to the battalion PAC for processing.</li> <li>c. Coordinated all finance actions through the battalion PAC and the finance office.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Approved or disapproved personnel administrative actions (pass, leave, and emergency leave).</p> <p>* 7. Company leaders initiate judicial and nonjudicial punishment actions.</p> <p>    a. Drafted a summary of the incident or violation.</p> <p>    b. Obtained and assembled investigation reports and witness statements.</p> <p>    c. Reviewed the incident or violation to determine the best course of action (COA).</p> <p>    d. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</p> <p>* 8. Company leaders monitor personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures.</p> <p>    a. Ensured that the means were available for obtaining assistance (according to the SOP).</p> <p>    b. Coordinated with higher HQ for morale and personnel support.</p> <p>* 9. The company commander initiates an officer's evaluation report (OER)</p> <p>*10. The platoon leader or sergeant initiates a noncommissioned officer (NCO) checklist or record and the noncommissioned officer evaluation report (NCOER).</p> <p>    a. Drafted work sheets for the NCO checklist or record and the NCOER.</p> <p>    b. Forwarded the draft work sheets to the battalion PAC.</p> <p>    c. Maintained the appropriate privacy measures during all stages of the process.</p> <p>*11. Company leaders coordinate the medical and dental treatment of all assigned personnel (for nonbattle injuries).</p> <p>    a. Ensured that the procedures for medical and dental assistance were coordinated with higher HQ.</p> <p>    b. Adhered to the medical or dental evaluation of the medical or dental authority.</p> <p>*12. Company leaders coordinate for chaplain assistance.</p> <p>    a. Coordinated the presentation of religious services.</p> <p>    b. Advised personnel on how to obtain chaplain assistance.</p> <p>*13. Company leaders coordinate for Red Cross assistance.</p> <p>    a. Advised personnel on how to obtain Red Cross assistance.</p> <p>    b. Recommended personnel for Red Cross assistance.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies (05-2-0042)

(FM 63-1)  
(FM 63-20)

(FM 4-93.4)  
(FM 63-21)

(FM 63-2)  
(FM 63-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is supporting a maneuver force. The maneuver Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) requests supplies to implement the unit obstacle plan and arranges for the supplies to be throughput to the task force (TF) area. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational to request supplies for combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company receives and distributes Class IV/Class V (engineer) throughput supplies to sustain platoon operations without impeding the mission accomplishment. Digital units send and receive requests for throughput supplies using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit receives throughput supplies.</li> <li>* 2. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) determines the supply point and linkup point locations.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the locations were covered, concealed, and convenient to the platoon work sites.</li> <li>b. Identified a linkup point with the supporting CSS element. Ensured that the location was easily identifiable and located on or near a main supply route (MSR).</li> <li>c. Designated a guide at the linkup point.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit off-loads the supplies.</li> <li>* 4. The XO or the 1SG plans coordination.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated material-handling equipment (MHE).</li> <li>b. Coordinated troop labor, if needed.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The unit loads the supplies on company vehicles or establishes a holding area.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated for additional trucks, if needed.</li> <li>b. Designated parking or holding areas that allowed for dispersion, camouflage, cover and concealment, and good access and egress routes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The unit establishes control measures for the movement.</li> <li>7. The unit establishes a storage site to protect the supplies from the elements and provide security.</li> <li>8. The unit distributes the supplies using the supply point distribution or the unit distribution method.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Used the supply point distribution method.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified items needed for the engineer platoon tasks.</li> <li>(2) Established a pickup schedule.</li> <li>(3) Notified the platoons of the time and place of issue.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Organized available MHE, if required. (5) Issued supplies. (6) Obtained new requests from the platoons. b. Used the unit distribution method. (1) Identified items needed for the engineer platoon tasks. (2) Established a resupply sequence. (3) Uploaded the supply vehicles using reverse loading. (4) Established a linkup point and time with the platoons. If the platoons were in the battlefield or TF area, coordinated with the battalion or TF S4 for logistics package (LOGPAC) operations. (5) Issued supplies. (6) Obtained new requests from the platoons. <b>NOTE: Digital units can forward supply requests through the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System to higher headquarters (HQ). The locations for issue are plotted on the digital overlay.</b>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Coordinate for Medical Services (05-2-0050)  
 (FM 4-02) (FM 4-02.6) (FM 8-10-6)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is performing continuous tactical operations. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** All leaders know the evacuation procedures and where to receive medical support. Subunits can identify the location of medical facilities and services. Medical support is available at all times. The digital units send and receive information using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander determines medical-support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assessed the number and type of missions assigned and anticipated.</li> <li>b. Considered the size of the element performing the mission.</li> <li>c. Reviewed the time periods for mission accomplishment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) requests medical support from the Adjutant (US Army) (S1) and Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). Included the following critical information on the request:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The number of medics needed.</li> <li>b. The date and time that the medics were needed.</li> <li>c. Any special equipment that the medics needed to bring.</li> <li>d. The time and location that the medics would link up with the unit.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) coordinates for pickup and assigns medics.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed medics on the mission.</li> <li>b. Assigned medics to platoons based on the mission.</li> <li>c. Briefed medics on administration and logistical support, such as mess time, stand-to, and sleep areas.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. The XO or the 1SG plans for the treatment and evacuation of casualties.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established sick call procedures according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Located medical facilities and medical supply points in the area of operations (AO).</li> <li>c. Planned treatment operations with the assistance of the medic.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designated the company casualty collection point.</li> <li>(2) Selected casualty evacuation routes.</li> <li>(3) Determined the disposition of casualty weapons and equipment.</li> <li>(4) Planned security for the casualty collection point.</li> <li>(5) Ensured that all elements designated aid and litter teams.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Identified and disseminated evacuation procedures.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified medical-evacuation (MEDEVAC) procedures.</li> <li>(2) Determined routes.</li> <li>(3) Identified the vehicle to be used as an ambulance.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Determined medical facility locations.                      (5) Included information in all operation orders (OPORDs).</p> <p>5. Company personnel and medics administer first aid to wounded personnel and evacuate casualties to the company collection point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Caused no further injury during evacuation.</li> <li>b. Used poleless or improvised (poncho) litters.</li> <li>c. Employed the 1- or 2-man carrying method.</li> </ul> <p>6. The 1SG, the designated NCO, or the medic arranges the casualty evacuation from the company collection point to the medical facility.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the nearest medical facility to which the casualty was to be evacuated.</li> <li>b. Contacted the medical facility where the casualty was being transported.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensured that the facility could accommodate the casualty.</li> <li>(2) Provided all available medical information regarding the casualty.</li> <li>(3) Requested advice regarding special measures to be taken before and during the evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Evacuated nonthreatening injuries by ground ambulance.</li> <li>d. Evacuated life-threatening injuries by helicopter, using MEDEVAC procedures as outlined in the company SOP.</li> <li>e. Caused no further injuries during evacuation.</li> <li>f. Retained all classified materials (signal operation instructions [SOI], maps, orders, overlays) and weapons in the custody of the casualty.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The commander notifies higher headquarters (HQ) of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided the casualty's name, rank, and medical condition.</li> <li>b. Reported the facility to which the soldier was evacuated.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send alert messaging regarding casualties and requests for medical support according to the unit tactical SOP (TACSOP).</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points (05-2-1068)  
(FM 5-100) (FM 20-32) (FM 90-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The task force (TF) is in continuous operations during daylight or darkness. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer elements are in support of TF operations during defensive and offensive operations. The location of Class IV and Class V supply points must be established in order to sustain combat effectiveness. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader analyzes the mission and determines necessary Class IV and Class V supplies.</p> <p>a. Ensured that basic loads for each weapons system were on hand.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Basic loads can be used to accomplish the mission; however, resupply should come from mission loads.</b></p> <p>b. Determined critical events where Class IV and Class V supplies were needed according to the decision support template (DST) and the synchronization matrix.</p> <p><b>NOTE: This is done in coordination with the TF engineer.</b></p> <p>c. Organized the engineer elements that were task-organized to pick up, transport, and deliver supplies in a timely manner.</p> <p>d. Transmitted requests.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units send requests, using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), through higher headquarters (HQ) to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</b></p> <p>2. The TF S4 coordinates for Class IV and Class V supplies.</p> <p>a. Coordinated with the supporting combat service support (CSS) element to determine the availability of Class IV and Class V supplies.</p> <p>b. Coordinated the pickup points of the using units.</p> <p>c. Requested additional haul assets when the organic transportation assets were depleted.</p> <p>d. Determined personnel requirements for the Class IV and Class V supply points. Tasked for personnel in the TF operation order (OPORD), if not in the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</p> <p>e. Determined and coordinated with the TF engineer for the necessary Class IV and Class V materials.</p> <p>f. Tracked the current quantities of material at the Class IV and Class V supply points.</p> <p>* 3. The platoon leader or sergeant prepares to execute the haul mission.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units plot the pickup-point location on the digital overlay according to the unit TACSOP.</b></p> <p>a. Performed troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>b. Coordinated the pickup-point location with the company operations.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Moved assets to the designated location and performed the haul mission.		
d. Distributed assets according to the obstacle plan allocation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-1600	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-7000)  
 (FM 10-67-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A unit is in a contemporary operating environment conducting refueling operations. The unit is refueling so as to continue the momentum of operations. The unit has designated a refueling location. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit refuels vehicles according to the schedule without affecting ongoing operations at the designated location. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) organizes a refueling operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated with the next higher supply activity for bulk-fuel supply according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>b. Established a refueling schedule for engineer equipment (high-consumption vehicles). Modified the schedule, as needed, to ensure that the company accomplished critical missions.</li> <li>c. Coordinated with supporting units for additional refueling support, as needed.</li> <li>d. Selected a refueling point that was central to the work sites and had good cover and concealment locations and good ingress and egress routes.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units use either FM or digital systems (Army Battle Command System [ABCS]) to update the digital overlay of the refueling location and send the location to the elements requiring fuel and supporting units.</b></p> <p>2. Refueling personnel support the unit according to the established schedule.</p> <p>3. Refueling personnel establish the fuel point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Grounded the fuel truck using the procedures specified in the appropriate technical manual (TM).</li> <li>b. Positioned fire extinguishers in a readily available location.</li> <li>c. Established traffic control patterns to minimize congestion.</li> </ul> <p>4. Element personnel conduct refueling operations.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Actions at the refueling point regarding petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) distribution is provided in the operation order (OPORD).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Turned off the vehicles engine.</li> <li>b. Grounded the fuel truck to the refueling vehicle.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Issued packaged POL, as needed. d. Maintained dispersion based on the terrain with a minimum spacing of 50 meters. e. Maintained noise and light discipline. f. Observed safety procedures.  * 5. The XO or the 1SG coordinates bulk refueling for the fuel truck. a. Identified the location of bulk-refueling points. b. Coordinated for additional bulk refueling, if needed. c. Restocked onboard packaged POL.  * 6. Element leaders monitor the refueling process.  * 7. The XO or the 1SG updates the fuel forecast with the battalion task force (TF) Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).  8. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) submit reports according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1068	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points
05-3-1600	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)  
 (FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (FM 12-6) (FM 3-21.38)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. The unit has no organic medical-treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TACSOP, the OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified casualty collection points.</li> <li>c. Identified transport requirements.</li> <li>d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport.</li> <li>e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>f. Coordinated security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and the higher HQ operations element.</li> <li>g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel.</li> <li>h. Forwarded the casualty feeder report and witness statements to the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. Element personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.05-T01A for detailed treatment procedures.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Reported casualties.</li> <li>c. Collected classified documents, such as signal operation instructions (SOI), standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists.</li> <li>d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the unit HQ according to the TACSOP.</p> <p>3. Element personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and the injury.</li> <li>Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identified the litter teams.</li> <li>Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>Secured the casualty on the litter.</li> <li>Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>5. Element personnel transport casualties to a medical-treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>Secured casualties in the vehicle.</li> <li>Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.</li> </ol> <p>* 6. The commander and leaders request an aeromedical evacuation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPORD, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>Selected the landing site (which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off) according to FMs 8-10-6 and 3-21.38.</li> <li>Supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about before aircraft arrival.</li> <li>Supervised the security of the landing site according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>Ensured that the landing zone (LZ) was appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to the TACSOP, if required.</li> </ol> <p>7. Element personnel assist in loading the ambulance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Employed the proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew.</li> <li>Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</li> <li>Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ol> <p>8. Element personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Assumed MOPP4.</li> <li>Marked contaminated casualties according to the TACSOP.</li> <li>Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties were en route to their location.</li> <li>Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.</li> <li>Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.</li> </ol> <p>9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TACSOP. b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before transport. c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TACSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)  
 (FM 8-51) (FM 22-51)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Combat health support (CHS) operations have commenced. Element personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. The sleep plan and the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) to manage battle fatigue (BF) soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period, causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that procedures for managing battlefield stress be implemented. Simplified collective-protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

**NOTE:** Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military occupational specialty (MOS) specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander and leaders perform stress prevention actions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>c. Briefed the leaders' intention to all unit personnel.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning the unit missions, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Instituted an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors.</li> <li>g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.</li> <li>b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required.</li> <li>b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.</p> <p>d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.</p> <p>* 4. Leaders implement stress coping and management techniques.</p> <p>a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately.</p> <p>b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home front problems.</p> <p>c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders.</p> <p>d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel before deployment.</p> <p>e. Conducted after-action debriefings.</p> <p>f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any traumatic event according to Field Manual (FM) 22-51.</p> <p>g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies.</p> <p>* 5. The commander and leaders implement stress control techniques.</p> <p>a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases.</p> <p>b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks.</p> <p>c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers.</p> <p>d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical-treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation.</p> <p>e. Reintegrated return-to-duty (RTD) soldiers into their specific element.</p> <p>6. Element personnel employ stress prevention measures.</p> <p>a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit mission, purpose, and abilities.</p> <p>b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan.</p> <p>c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF.</p> <p>d. Provided immediate buddy aid support.</p> <p>e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor.</p> <p>f. Accepted new unit members immediately.</p> <p>g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places.</p> <p>h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)  
 (FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)  
 (AR 40-5) (FM 4-25.12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Health hazards exist that require field sanitation measures. The element is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit field sanitation team (FST). The combat health support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and the higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The FST performs field sanitation measures according to the TACSOP, Field Manuals (FMs) 21-10 and 4-25.12, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field sanitation activities are performed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander directs field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed field sanitation activities to counter a medical threat.</li> <li>b. Monitored field sanitation activities for compliance with FMs 21-10 and 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Enforced individual field sanitation measures.</li> <li>d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit FST according to the TACSOP and the OPORD.</li> <li>e. Corrected field sanitation deficiencies.</li> <li>f. Reported field sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST.</li> <li>g. Enforced safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The FST supervises the unit field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the field sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12.</li> <li>b. Supervised the distribution of field sanitation basic-load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12.</li> <li>c. Tested the unit water supply for the required chlorine residual level according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>d. Inspected water containers and trailers according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures (skin, clothing, and bed net repellent) against arthropods and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required.</li> <li>g. Monitored personnel for the employment of correct hygiene measures.</li> <li>h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP, as required.</li> <li>i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities to ensure their compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander.</li> <li>n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Consumed only water designated as potable.</li> <li>d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries.</li> <li>f. Employed personal-hygiene measures.</li> <li>g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed net repellent.</li> <li>h. Reported field sanitation deficiencies to the FST.</li> <li>i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP.</li> <li>j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons  
 Company

**TASK:** Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-64) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available; nonmortuary affairs personnel perform the task. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials.

**NOTE:** Only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element either recovers the killed in action (KIA) and evacuates them to a designated mortuary-affair collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. Locations of the emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ). These activities are curtailed in MOPP4. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element commander designates a search-and-recovery team.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a team leader.</li> <li>b. Issued guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The search-and-recovery team leader prepares for the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a map or aerial reconnaissance of the search area.</li> <li>b. Identified additional support requirements.</li> <li>c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Identified the search pattern to be used.</li> <li>e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Coordinated area security with higher HQ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises the search-and-recovery and the evacuation operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the search-and-recovery team on operational procedures.</li> <li>b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches (if available), and NBC agent tags.</li> <li>c. Assigned the search area.</li> <li>d. Monitored the search-and-recovery team operations for compliance with the TACSOP and the commander's guidance.</li> <li>e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ.</li> <li>f. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>4. The search-and-recovery team conducts the search.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checked the area immediately for mines or booby traps.</li> <li>b. Searched the assigned areas for remains and personal effects.</li> <li>c. Marked the terrain location of the remains with pegs.</li> <li>d. Collected all disassociated personal effects.</li> <li>e. Recorded the 8-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site.</li> </ul> <p>5. The search-and-recovery team recovers remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Established tentative identification.</li> <li>b. Attached the NBC tag or a tag marked with a large C to the contaminated and contagious remains.</li> <li>c. Attached personal effects to the remains.</li> <li>d. Shrouded the remains with available materials.</li> <li>e. Prepared a sketch of the recovery site.</li> <li>f. Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site.</li> </ul> <p>6. The search-and-recovery team evacuates remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified that personal effects were attached to the remains.</li> <li>b. Loaded the remains in ground transportation, feet first and in aircraft, headfirst.</li> <li>c. Transported the remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary-affair collection point.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the specific burial site.</li> <li>b. Supervised the marking of the grave site.</li> <li>c. Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects.</li> </ul> <p>8. The search-and-recovery team performs emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepared the grave site.</li> <li>b. Placed the remains in the grave.</li> <li>c. Marked all grave sites.</li> <li>d. Buried the United States, allied, and enemy forces remains with their personal effects in separate grave sites.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

\*\* indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Receive Airdrop Resupply (10-2-0319.05-T01A)  
 (FM 10-27-1) (FM 10-27-2) (FM 10-500-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Since the normal supply support transportation is unavailable, supplies and equipment are requested by airdrop.

**NOTE:** An airdrop of supplies and equipment may be preplanned or immediate. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company derigs and recovers supplies, equipment, and rigging gear. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element requests supplies and equipment by airdrop.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the required supplies and equipment.</li> <li>b. Identified the drop zone (DZ).</li> <li>c. Determined the date and time of the airdrop request.</li> <li>d. Forwarded the request for a preplanned or immediate airdrop to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 2. The element commander and the element leaders develop the airdrop supply and equipment receipt plan.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designated a recovery officer and a safety officer.</li> <li>b. Verified the delivery time and location with the S4.</li> <li>c. Coordinated the survey of the DZ or area of operations (AO) with the pathfinders, the combat control team (CCT), or the DZ support team (DZST) through the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Prepared the recovery and alternate plans.</li> <li>e. Identified the number of people, equipment, and vehicles required for the recovery of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the transportation and materials-handling-equipment (MHE) support with the S4.</li> <li>g. Briefed personnel on the tactical situation and the recovery and alternative plans.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The company receives supplies and equipment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured the DZ or AO.</li> <li>b. Derigged supplies and equipment.</li> <li>c. Recorded shortages.</li> <li>d. Identified the damaged items.</li> <li>e. Evacuated supplies and equipment.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Retrieved the airdrop rigging equipment. g. Buried or destroyed the airdrop rigging equipment that could not be removed. h. Inspected the DZ to make certain that no serviceable airdrop equipment was left behind. i. Forwarded the airdrop equipment to the nearest collection point or other location as directed by the S4. j. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to the S2 or S3 and the S4.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A)  
 (DA PAM 710-2-1) (AR 710-2) (FM 3-4)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element headquarters (HQ) is receiving requests for supplies from subordinate elements. The equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels, but additional supplies may be required. Extra small arms and ammunition are stored in the supply area. The unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the battalion operation order (OPORD) are available. The supply area has been established and supply support is a continuous task that is performed simultaneously with other support and operational tasks. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The equipment and supplies are distributed without interfering with mission requirements as established by the TACSOP and the OPORD. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, unit supply support is reduced to the minimum-essential actions. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means according to unit TACSOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element commander directs unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the supply records and status to ensure compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Directed inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Inspected unit equipment, weapons, and ammunition storage areas for compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>d. Directed the issue of supplies and equipment according to battalion guidance and the TACSOP or both sustainment controls.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The supply sergeant supervises unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the supply status to determine total assets.</li> <li>b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Developed the supply storage plans.</li> <li>d. Monitored supply transactions to ensure compliance with established supply procedures.</li> <li>e. Supervised the control of weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>f. Prepared input to the materiel condition status reports (MCSR).</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Supply personnel request additional supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinated requirements with the elements.</li> <li>b. Calculated resupply requirements.</li> <li>c. Recorded requests on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>d. Forwarded resupply requests to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Supply personnel receive supplies.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition.</li> <li>b. Recorded receipt of supplies on the appropriate document register.</li> <li>c. Stored supplies according to storage plans.</li> <li>d. Notified the requesting element of the availability of supplies for issue.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Supply personnel issue supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processed supply requests according to the appropriate regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Prepared transaction documents according to the appropriate regulations, directives, and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Issued supplies as prescribed in the commander's guidance.</li> <li>d. Maintained the prescribed copies of the transactions according to the appropriate regulations and directives.</li> </ul> 6. Supply personnel maintain small arms and ammunition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition according to the appropriate regulations and command policies.</li> <li>b. Requested ammunition resupply from the S4.</li> <li>c. Performed unit-level maintenance on small arms.</li> <li>d. Forwarded weapons beyond organizational-repair capabilities to the support maintenance elements.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A)  
(TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element installs wire, a switchboard (SB), and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Designated personnel operate a telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, used the end-item list to check the components.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>e. Performed the SB preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> <li>g. Connected local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the field wire or cable before installation.</li> <li>b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader.</li> <li>c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain.</li> <li>d. Used the proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>e. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation.</li> <li>g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Designated personnel operate the telephone SB.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the SB was operational.</li> <li>b. Processed calls.</li> <li>c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone SB according to TM 11-5805-262-12.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established.  5. Designated personnel perform PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)  
 (TM 11-5805-294-12)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The internal communications network is set up according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain.</li> <li>b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines.</li> <li>d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task.</li> <li>e. Prepared a telephone traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system.</li> <li>f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the standing signal instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone system users.</li> </ul> <p>2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available.</li> <li>b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from adverse elements.</li> <li>c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up.</li> <li>d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM.</li> <li>f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram.</li> <li>g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines.</li> </ul> <p>3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed the distribution box.</li> <li>b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing.</li> <li>c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader.</li> <li>d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points.</li> <li>f. Tagged the wire ties.</li> <li>g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment.</li> <li>h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads.</li> <li>i. Finished the line route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction.</li> </ul> <p>4. The section operates the telephone SB.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational.</li> <li>b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties.</li> <li>c. Processed calls.</li> <li>d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required.</li> <li>e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM.</li> </ul> <p>5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field cable or wire lines.</li> <li>b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)  
 (FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8) (DD FORM 2745)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates the EPWs according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The element searches the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed weapons and documents that had intelligence value.</li> <li>b. Returned the personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property that was taken.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The element segregates the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, desertion status, civilian status, nationality, and ideology.</li> <li>b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The element silences the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prevented the EPW leaders from giving orders.</li> <li>b. Prevented the EPWs from planning an escape.</li> <li>c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The element safeguards the EPWs.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield.</li> <li>b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Treated the EPWs humanely.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture.</li> <li>b. Attached Part A to the EPWs.</li> <li>c. Retained Part B for the unit records.</li> <li>d. Attached Part C to the property.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs. b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point. c. Exploited the intelligence information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A)  
 (FM 4-30.3) (AR 220-1) (AR 385-40)  
 (AR 700-138) (AR 750-1) (DA PAM 738-750)  
 (FM 9-43-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative organic equipment. The element maintenance area is established. The required tools, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Element maintenance is a continuous task and is performed simultaneously with other internal support and operational tasks. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element vehicles and equipment are maintained according to the appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and the commander's guidance. Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element commander directs the element maintenance program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervised the implementation of the unit maintenance program to ensure compliance with the commander's guidance and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Identified the company operational levels by reviewing the vehicle and equipment status reports.</li> <li>c. Approved the use of controlled exchanges when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>d. Approved repairs using the battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR) procedures when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>e. Checked the materiel condition status report (MCSR) for accuracy and completeness.</li> <li>f. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems to minimize their impact on element readiness.</li> <li>g. Coordinated the resolution of maintenance problems with the battalion maintenance officer (BMO).</li> <li>h. Forwarded the MCSR to the BMO.</li> <li>i. Conducted periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure that the safety program was enforced.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Section leaders supervise operator maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored PMCS performance for compliance with the appropriate TMs and the commander's guidance.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Inspected personnel and equipment to ensure compliance with the safety program.</li> <li>c. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the motor sergeant.</li> <li>d. Monitored the supply of the repair parts for platoon equipment to ensure that the repair parts were on order.</li> <li>e. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant.</li> <li>f. Maintained the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment.</li> <li>g. Provided input for the MCSR to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>3. Company personnel perform operator maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed PMCS according to the appropriate TMs.</li> <li>b. Notified the supervisor of any maintenance problems beyond the operator's capability.</li> <li>c. Requested approval for the BDAR through the platoon leader when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>d. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual.</li> <li>e. Assisted the unit maintenance personnel with the repairs and services.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The motor sergeant supervises the unit maintenance personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organized the element maintenance personnel to perform element maintenance activities.</li> <li>b. Supervised The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) and the prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>c. Supervised the repair and the inspection procedures to ensure that they were done safely and according to the appropriate references.</li> <li>d. Requested approval for the BDAR from the commander when the established repair procedures could not be used.</li> <li>e. Supervised the BDAR procedures to ensure that they were done according to the appropriate BDAR manuals.</li> <li>f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges from the commander when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>g. Supervised the use of controlled exchanges for compliance with the commander's guidance.</li> <li>h. Notified the platoon or section leaders upon completion of the repairs.</li> <li>i. Supervised the recovery operations to ensure that the correct recovery and safety procedures were used.</li> <li>j. Supervised the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure that the testing of oil samples was done at the required intervals.</li> <li>k. Coordinated the maintenance status with the platoon leader.</li> <li>l. Provided the unit maintenance status to the commander.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Diagnosed faults on the inoperative equipment.</li> <li>b. Requested the required repair parts from the PLL clerk.</li> <li>c. Repaired the equipment according to applicable TMs.</li> <li>d. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant when the established repair parts were not available.</li> <li>e. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual.</li> <li>f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges through the motor sergeant when the required repair parts were not available.</li> <li>g. Performed controlled exchanges.</li> <li>h. Performed a final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs.</li> <li>i. Employed safety procedures to minimize accidents.</li> </ul> <p>6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the category of the repair as direct support or higher.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Corrected unit level deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Prepared the required documentation for submission to support maintenance.</li> <li>d. Evacuated the equipment to support maintenance.</li> <li>e. Verified the completion of repairs.</li> <li>f. Picked up the equipment upon the completion of repairs.</li> </ul> <p>7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative-support functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained the PLL.</li> <li>b. Requested repair parts for element equipment.</li> <li>c. Turned in unserviceable, repairable items.</li> <li>d. Maintained technical publications on all organic equipment.</li> </ul> <p>8. Unit maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verified the location of the disabled vehicle.</li> <li>b. Identified the best route to the vehicle, given the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Coordinated indirect-fire support along the route with the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3).</li> <li>d. Maintained security while en route to the recovery site.</li> <li>e. Established local security at the recovery site.</li> <li>f. Removed casualties from vehicles.</li> <li>g. Treated casualties.</li> <li>h. Requested medical assistance, if required.</li> <li>i. Evacuated casualties, if required.</li> <li>j. Performed a battle damage assessment to determine if repairs were required.</li> <li>k. Performed repairs and the BDAR on site, if possible.</li> <li>l. Recovered nonrepairable equipment back to the unit maintenance area according to the established recovery procedures.</li> <li>m. Requested the disposition of unrecoverable equipment from the commander.</li> <li>n. Conducted salvage operations to remove all usable equipment.</li> <li>o. Prepared vehicles for destruction according to the TACSOP.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Prepare an Obstacle Plan (05-1-2000)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is supporting a maneuver unit in a contemporary operating environment. An engineer estimate and an initial engineer plan have been developed to support the operation. The engineer cell, the assistant brigade engineer (ABE) section, or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) section is tasked to prepare an obstacle plan using an estimate and guidance provided by the supported unit commander. Higher headquarters (HQ) provides guidance and identifies responsibilities; reserve and situational obstacles; obstacle belts and zones; obstacle restrictions; scatterable mine (SCATMINE) employment authority; and concept, priorities, and special instructions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The obstacle plan supports the task force (TF) commander's scheme of maneuver. The plan outlines how and where tactical obstacles are emplaced to turn, disrupt, fix, or block enemy forces and multiply the effects and capabilities of firepower.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The battalion staff obtains available information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the facts and developed assumptions.</li> <li>b. Analyzed the higher HQ mission and the commander's intent.</li> <li>c. Analyzed the relative combat power.</li> <li>d. Issued the commander's guidance.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. After the staff develops a course of action (COA), the detailed obstacle planning begins. The staff developed the obstacle plan to support the COA by focusing on the following three specifics:                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Fire analysis.</li> <li>b. Obstacle intent integration. The staff decided which specific effect each directed obstacle group must achieve. It planned the obstacle groups to—                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Disrupt the enemy.</li> <li>(2) Turn the enemy into areas where friendly units can mass fires.</li> <li>(3) Fix the enemy in the engagement area (EA) and enhance fires.</li> <li>(4) Block the enemy along an avenue of approach.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Obstacle priorities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. The staff conducts war gaming to determine which COA it should recommend to the commander. The staff should consider obstacles within the total context of the COA. The staff specifically considered—                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Enemy reactions at obstacle groups versus the desired obstacle effect.</li> <li>b. The enemy breaching capability that may make one or more varieties of individual obstacles preferable.</li> <li>c. Obstacle locations that inhibit friendly maneuver.</li> <li>d. Compatible obstacle effects and weapon system capabilities.</li> <li>e. Adequate fire control measures to support the obstacle effect.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. After war gaming, the staff adjusts the COA to include the obstacle plan. These adjustments could have included the following:                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Changes to locations of directed obstacle groups.</li> <li>b. Changes to the obstacle effect at a specific location.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Addition of situational obstacle groups.  d. Addition of reserve obstacle groups.  e. Identification of other mobility requirements.</p> <p>* 5. The staff identifies mobility requirements. Determined—  a. Which obstacles needed lanes or bypasses available for friendly forces.  b. Locations for lanes and bypasses based on tactical repositioning from the maneuver graphics, such as a route, axis, or subsequent position.  c. Command and control (C2) mobility requirements, including plans for rehearsals and physical placement of target reference points (TRPs).  d. Lanes and bypasses that were needed to support sustainment traffic.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Consider the main supply routes (MSRs) into and through the TF area, the TF logistics release point (LRP), the routes the company team takes from its position to the LRP, and the location of key TF logistics nodes.</b></p> <p>6. The staff conducts a more detailed obstacle plan that supports that COA, after comparing the COAs and determining the COA for recommendation to the commander.  a. Determined the tentative design and resourcing for the obstacle plan and completed the final design and resourcing after the commander approved the COA and any final changes</p> <p><b>NOTE: Final design normally occurs at the company team and emplacing unit level. The staff can develop a detailed concept that will require only minor modifications to support the final approved plan.</b></p> <p>b. Used the plan for the individual obstacles, which made up a group, as a guide for the TF staff to adjust the resource allocation.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If time is available for detailed reconnaissance, the group design may provide the company teams with the actual obstacle design for each group. The design of the obstacle groups usually serves as a guide to company teams, and they conduct the actual design of the individual obstacles with the emplacing unit leader.</b></p> <p>7. The staff completes the plan and publishes the order, once the commander selects a COA.</p> <p>8. The staff makes final adjustments to the plan and provides the subordinate units with oral, written, and graphical information, with enough detail to allow the subordinate unit to conduct the operation.</p> <p>9. The TF gives information concerning obstacles to subordinates using the scheme-of-obstacles overlay and the obstacle execution matrix.  a. Used the scheme-of-obstacles overlay to depict the location of obstacle belts, brigade obstacle groups, and TF groups within the TF sector.  (1) Included obstacle restrictions from any higher level (the staff annotates restrictions that it cannot show graphically).  (2) Portrayed obstacle groups using an obstacle effect graphic.</p> <p><b>NOTE: Obstacle graphics define the general location and the effect to be achieved by individual obstacles. The obstacle overlay does not normally depict individual obstacle locations. Alternately, the staff may include individual proposed obstacle graphics with the obstacle effect graphic to guide the emplacing unit and the owning unit on the general configuration of the obstacle group. Commanders must exercise caution if they use individual proposed obstacles on an overlay. They must ensure that inexperienced subordinates do not attempt to emplace obstacles exactly as depicted on an overlay, instead of properly siting the obstacle.</b></p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Used the obstacle execution matrix, which included specific instructions and detailed information concerning the obstacles on the scheme-of-obstacles overlay. Normally, there is a separate execution matrix for each type of tactical obstacle. As a minimum, a directed obstacle execution matrix should include the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The zone, belt, or group designation and individual obstacle numbers.</li> <li>(2) The location (grid coordinates appropriate to the detail of the plan). This may be a center-of-mass grid for the group, start and end points of the group trace, or grid coordinates for individual obstacles, if known.</li> <li>(3) The obstacle effect for the group.</li> <li>(4) The priority for the group.</li> <li>(5) The emplacing and owning unit.</li> <li>(6) The location of any lanes and closure instructions or reference to a reserve obstacle matrix, if appropriate.</li> <li>(7) Material or assets allocated for the group (possibly listed by the number of standard obstacles).</li> <li>(8) The location of the obstacle materials (the Class IV and Class V point or other site).</li> <li>(9) Any special instructions for each group.</li> </ol>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0003	Prepare an Engineer Annex (Battalion)
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company) (05-2-0002)  
 (FM 5-100) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)  
 (FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-102) (FM 5-103)  
 (FM 5-34) (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The element is either working directly for an engineer unit from which it has received an operation order (OPORD), or supporting a maneuver force that has received a mission from its higher headquarters (HQ). The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer estimate gives the element leader feasible courses of action (COAs) consistent with the supported commander's scheme of maneuver. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Reports are followed up with pertinent Department of the Army (DA) forms. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader performs a mission analysis.  <b>NOTE: The digital units perform collaborative planning using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS). Available products include the Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS), the All-Source Analysis System (ASAS), and the Integrated Meteorological System (IMETS).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the intent of the immediate commander and the commander who is two levels up.</li> <li>b. Identified the area of operation (AO).</li> <li>c. Identified the tasks to be performed, including those specified (directed) in the commander's verbal guidance or in the OPORD, and those implied by the nature of the operation. Decided which tasks were essential to the success of the mission.</li> <li>d. Identified the constraints or acts requiring completion.</li> <li>e. Identified the restraints or prohibited acts.</li> <li>f. Restated the unit mission in terms of who, what (including all essential tasks), when, where, and why.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader performs a situation analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified the composition of supported operations and forces, the nature of the operations, any unusual requirements, and other factors affecting the size and scope of the support mission.</li> <li>b. Identified the impact of—                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Precipitation and temperature on the following:                                 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Trafficability of enemy and friendly combat vehicles.</li> <li>(b) Water obstacle depth, the water flow rate, and the bank conditions.</li> <li>(c) Ability of the forces to dig positions and tank ditches.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(2) Fog or limited visibility on the positioning of obstacles.</li> <li>(3) Limited visibility and reduced trafficability of engineer vehicle capabilities to maneuver and keep pace with the maneuver unit fighting vehicles.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		



TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Extreme weather conditions on the employment of conventional and scatterable mines (SCATMINES).</p> <p>c. Analyzed the terrain for—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Observation or fields of fire. Analyzed the impact of observation or fields of fire on obstacle placement (both friendly and enemy). Determined what items, buildings, or vegetation that needed to be cleared to improve observation.</li> <li>(2) Cover and concealment. Identified concealed locations for engineer equipment and materials, especially during breaching and river crossing operations. Identified possible combat trails offering cover and concealment from enemy ground, air, and satellite surveillance.</li> <li>(3) Obstacles. Identified existing, natural, and man-made obstacles and their impact on maneuver, avenues of approach (AA), and the placement of reinforcing obstacles. Evaluated obstacles with respect to friendly and enemy maneuver and the type of unit.</li> <li>(4) Key or decisive terrain. Determined potential engineer tasks required to facilitate friendly control or deny enemy control.</li> <li>(5) Avenues of approach. Identified friendly and enemy mobility corridors and AA based on the unit. Evaluated engineer actions to enhance or hinder movement on these AAs.</li> </ol> <p>d. Identified other characteristics important to the engineer plan.</p> <p>e. Coordinated with the supported unit Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) to develop the enemy situation by providing input about the enemy engineer capability.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Estimated the strength of the enemy engineer units, including any information (confirmed, suspected, or based on doctrinal techniques) concerning reinforcement to organic enemy engineers from higher enemy echelons.</li> <li>(2) Determined the location of the enemy engineer units and other units having engineer-related capability, including helicopters and artillery units with remotely-delivered mine capability.</li> <li>(3) Assessed the enemy capabilities for breaching, gap crossing, obstacle emplacement, survivability, and emplacement of remotely-delivered mines from aircraft or artillery.</li> <li>(4) Evaluated current significant activities, including engineer battlefield tactics and techniques, to identify weaknesses and strengths.</li> <li>(5) Predicted the possible and most likely COA by the enemy and the impact of the enemy engineer situation on these COAs.</li> <li>(6) Created templates of the location of enemy obstacles, to include SCATMINES, based on available intelligence and doctrinal templates.</li> <li>(7) Created templates of the location of the enemy engineer assets within the enemy formation for offensive operations.</li> </ol> <p>f. Evaluated his own situation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identified the present disposition of major tactical elements, possible COAs, and current and projected operations.</li> <li>(2) Identified the disposition of logistics units and facilities supporting engineer operations, levels of engineer Class IV and Class V items, and the availability of transportation assets.</li> <li>(3) Identified the present disposition and capabilities of the elements, and estimated the completion times of the current tasks and the combat-support units required to assist with engineer tasks (especially SCATMINES).</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 3. The element leader develops at least two separate COAs to accomplish the mission, or develops an engineer plan as part of each COA under development by the maneuver force.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified all tasks and the necessary resources to accomplish them for each location or each supported unit. Calculated countermobility capabilities based on the element, the time available, and the unit planning factors (used planning factors in current field manual if unit planning factors were unknown). Included the use of scatterable-mine-laying systems in capability calculations.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Computed blade hours using known data. Used planning factors in current field manuals.</li> <li>(2) Computed the element hours.</li> <li>(3) Identified any unique or special equipment requirements.</li> <li>(4) Identified supply requirements by class of supply and specific items.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Determined task priorities based on guidance received from the higher commander.</li> <li>c. Allocated engineer forces to—               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Meet the guidance of the higher commander.</li> <li>(2) Accomplish all tasks.</li> <li>(3) Employ assets efficiently with no wasted squad or equipment time.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>* 4. The element leader analyzes each COA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. War-gamed the engineer plan for each COA against the anticipated enemy actions and reactions. Evaluated the plan against impacting significant factors.</li> <li>b. Determined shortfalls by comparing resource requirements with available assets.</li> <li>c. Reduced shortfalls by establishing priorities, sequencing activities, selecting alternate methods, and altering the engineer plan as necessary, until the requirement was within plus or minus 10 percent of the available resources.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: If the engineer plan cannot meet the minimum critical maneuver requirements, then it is not feasible and the plan is invalid. The commander must recognize this and formulate a new plan, starting with subtask 3.</b></p> <p>* 5. The element leader compares each COA and selects the best one to accomplish the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the selection technique to use in the comparison.</li> <li>b. Used the significant factors identified in subtask 3a.</li> <li>c. Selected the best COA based on the subjective judgment along with the numerical techniques.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The commander may use numerical factors in his selection technique; however, the final decision is not based solely on simple mathematics.</b></p> <p>* 6. The element leader states his decision to his subordinates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined the company task organization and allocated resources.</li> <li>b. Summarized resource requirements by element hours, equipment, and logistics for each location or each supported unit.</li> <li>c. Assigned each task to a subordinate element.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The element leader recommends a COA to the supported maneuver commander.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identified a COA that could be best supported from the engineer perspective.</li> <li>b. Identified major deficiencies that the maneuver commander must remedy, including recommendations for eliminating or reducing the deficiencies.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
c. Recommended the command or support relationships and task organization as necessary, tasks to be directed to subordinate elements, and priorities for engineer support.		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-195-4050	Prepare Engineer Estimates

#### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0402	Integrate Engineer Reconnaissance Into the Brigade Reconnaissance and Surveillance (R&S) Plan
05-1-0412	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-2-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-2-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Company)
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-2-0403	Conduct a Water Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance
05-2-0410	Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-3-0404	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0405	Perform a Target Reconnaissance
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance
05-3-0411.05-R01A	Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
05-3-0413	Conduct a Tactical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Prepare an Engineer Annex (05-2-0003)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 5-100) (FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is supporting a maneuver force in a tactical operation. The company commander is the force engineer and must prepare an engineer annex as part of the supported unit operation order (OPORD). The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The annex contains essential information needed to support the maneuver commander's operation. The concept of the annex is clear and is understood by the maneuver force. The digital units send orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader selects an annex format based on the amount and type of information it will contain, the time available to produce it, and the guidance received from the maneuver unit Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). Any combination of the following formats can be used:</p> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units can perform collaborative planning, issue orders and reports, and update the common operational picture (COP) using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. A written annex using the basic five-paragraph order format.</li> <li>b. Situational awareness (SA) overlays of existing and proposed friendly obstacles and their control measures (belts, zones, restricted areas, lanes, or gaps); known and templated enemy obstacles; and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC)-contaminated areas.</li> <li>c. An obstacle list containing all of the obstacles.</li> <li>d. Engineer execution matrixes of all identified engineer tasks, all identified logistic and coordination requirements, and marginal notes to cover any other needed information.</li> </ul> <p>2. The engineer company ensures that the annex meets the correct criteria.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that information from the estimate process was applied.</li> <li>b. Verified that it contained any information related to the engineer plan that was not covered elsewhere in the order.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The annex may contain information already present in the parent order if it is necessary for clarity.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Ensured that it did not contain items covered in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP); however, it may have referenced the SOP.</li> <li>d. Ensured that it was directed to the major subordinate elements of the maneuver unit, and not just the engineers.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The engineer annex is not the engineer unit OPORD. It covers the entire engineer plan, not just the part pertaining to engineer units.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Ensured that it was clear, complete, brief, timely, avoided qualified directives, did not contain irrelevant information, and was issued with the OPORD.</li> <li>f. Ensured that it was integrated with the other parts of the OPORD.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Coordinated all tasks directed to units other than engineers before issuing the annex.</p> <p>(2) Coordinated all details with the appropriate battle staff element.</p> <p>* 3. The company commander prepares the annex using the following five-paragraph order format:</p> <p>a. SITUATION.</p> <p>(1) Enemy forces. Identified aspects significantly impacting engineer operations, including terrain, weather, and enemy engineer capability.</p> <p>(2) Friendly forces. Identified the designation, location, and activities of higher and adjacent engineers. Described other elements that were capable of assisting with the engineer plan.</p> <p><b>NOTE: The nonengineer units with scatterable mine (SCATMINE) emplacement capability (artillery, Army aviation, and Air Force) are identified here.</b></p> <p>(3) Attachments and detachments. Included only if they were needed for clarity.</p> <p>b. MISSION. Stated the mission of the engineers that were in support of the base OPORD.</p> <p>c. EXECUTION.</p> <p>(1) Scheme of engineer operations (SOEO).</p> <p>(a) Contained a brief statement of the concept of the engineer plan, including the priority of engineer support to subordinate elements. The statement was precise and specific.</p> <p>(b) Obstacles. Identified individual obstacles and obstacle groups, the type (reserved or preliminary), authorized commander (for reserved obstacles), and subordinate-unit obstacle responsibilities, as appropriate. Referred to an overlay and obstacle table.</p> <p>(c) Scatterable mines. Explained the employment concept, the authority for long and short duration self-destruct times (by system), other requirements or limitations, and the allocation to subordinate elements, as appropriate. Identified the nonengineer units that were responsible for emplacing SCATMINES.</p> <p>(2) Task to subordinate units. Identified tasks for subordinate maneuver units, engineers under the direct control of the issuing headquarters (HQ), and other elements that were assigned engineer tasks by the maneuver commander.</p> <p>(3) Coordinating instructions, as necessary. Ensured that the measures and reporting procedures applying to two or more subordinate units were completed.</p> <p>d. SERVICE SUPPORT. Contained logistic information that affected the engineer plan, specifically Class IV or Class V supplies and transportation. Identified available host nation assets and their location. Identified allocations and priorities for command-regulated items, such as—</p> <p>(1) Command-regulated classes of supply.</p> <p>(2) Class IV and Class V supplies distribution plan.</p> <p>(3) Transportation.</p> <p>(4) Medical evacuation and hospitalization.</p> <p>(5) Civil-military operations.</p> <p>e. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.</p> <p>(1) Command. Contained the location of the engineer command posts and identified command relationships.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Signal. Listed the specific signal operation instructions (SOI) index used by engineer elements and identified the call sign and the frequency of supporting units from another HQ. Identified any alternate means of communications for engineer missions, such as target demolition and lane closure. Provided instructions for coordinating and establishing communications.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-4065	Conduct Engineer Tactical Planning

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-1-0413	Plan/Direct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies
05-2-0300	Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Staff

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Integrate Engineer Elements Into the Maneuver Staff (05-2-0004)  
(FM 5-71-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is providing support to a maneuver task force (TF) in a contemporary operating environment. The engineer elements have been received from higher headquarters (HQ) to support TF operations. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The engineer elements must be integrated into the TF scheme of maneuver according to the commander's intent and must synchronize the engineer effort in conjunction with other battlefield operating systems (BOS). The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The TF engineer advises the TF commander on the use of engineer assets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed a mission analysis and recommended a task organization.</li> <li>b. Recommended a command or support relationship.</li> <li>c. Sent a warning order (WO) to the subordinate units.</li> <li>d. Participated in a staff orders process. Ensured that engineers were integrated into the process for fire support (FS), reconnaissance and surveillance (R&amp;S), and the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).</li> <li>e. Briefed subordinate leaders on the scheme of maneuver and the commander's intent.</li> <li>f. Monitored engineer activities and made recommendations, as necessary.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Leaders prepare the units for movement and linkup operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed and conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).</li> <li>b. Reviewed drills and orders.</li> </ul> <p>3. Elements prepare for combat operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Participated in the combined arms reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Participated in combined arms rehearsals.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units can perform collaborative planning and send orders, reports, and text messages using digital tools to conduct combat operations in support of the maneuver staff.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-3125	Direct a Row Minefield Siting Party

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Battalion)
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-0018)  
 (FM 24-1) (FM 24-18) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)  
 (FM 3-11) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 34-45)  
 (FM 7-7)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** In a contemporary operating environment, an element is conducting combat operations. The element is required to report according to the unit standard operating procedures (SOP). All communications systems are on hand and functional. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element submits reports, such as operational occurrence reports, spot reports (SPOTREPs), and shelling reports (SHELREPs) to higher headquarters (HQ) in a timely manner. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Reports should be in the correct format as shown in this task, the appropriate field manual, or the unit SOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The leaders submit the SPOTREP to higher HQ as required by the unit SOP or the situation.  <b>NOTE: The digital units send reports through alert messaging using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the SPOTREP included the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE).</li> <li>b. Dispatched the SPOTREP by the fastest means available in a tactical situation and within 5 minutes of receipt of the information. When necessary, the leaders submitted a partial report within the time constraints and updated it as additional information became available.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The leaders submit the SHELREP, the mortar bombing report (MORTREP), and the bombing report (BOMREP) to the next higher HQ.  <b>NOTE: The reports should include the following: The originating unit; the observer position; the direction; the time that the shelling began; the time that the shelling ended; the area that was bombed, shelled, rocketed, or mortared; the number and the nature of weapons and aircraft; the nature of fire (direct or indirect); the number, type, and caliber of shells, rockets, bombs, or mortar rounds; and the flash-to-bang time, damage, and angle of the fall or descent, as the time and the conditions permit.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the report within 30 minutes following the activity or consistent with the tactical situation.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Submitted the report, even if it contained incomplete information.</p> <p>c. Ensured that the encryption conformed to the signal operation instructions (SOI).</p> <p>3. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) submits a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) report to the net control station (NCS) within 10 minutes of notification of the activity. The report contained the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Item 1, the MIJI. Encrypted the numerals 022 when transmitting over nonsecure communications.</li> <li>b. Item 2, the type of interference. Encrypted the following numerals for interference when transmitting over nonsecure communications: meaconing - 1, intrusion - 2, jamming - 3, and interference - 4.</li> <li>c. Item 3, the instrument affected. Encrypted the following numerals for the affected instrument when transmitting over nonsecure communications: radio - 1, radar - 2, navigational aid - 3, satellite - 4, and electro-optics - 5.</li> <li>d. Item 4, the frequency or the affected channel. Encrypted the affected frequency when transmitting over nonsecure communications.</li> <li>e. Item 5, completed the call sign of the affected station operator (for secure and nonsecure communications).</li> <li>f. Item 6, completed the grid coordinates of the affected station. Encrypted the coordinates when transmitting by nonsecure means.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The leaders submit all operational occurrence reports as soon as the tactical situation permits. The information included—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The line of departure (LD) crossing.</li> <li>b. The checkpoint arrival times.</li> <li>c. The rally point (RP) arrival time.</li> <li>d. The logistics report.</li> <li>e. The intelligence report.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The leaders submit both verbal and written patrol reports as required by the unit SOP. The report included—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The designation of the patrol.</li> <li>b. The date.</li> <li>c. The unit receiving the report.</li> <li>d. The name of the person submitting the report.</li> <li>e. The size and composition of the patrol.</li> <li>f. The mission.</li> <li>g. The departure and return times.</li> <li>h. The routes out and back.</li> <li>i. A terrain description, including the— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Type of terrain, such as dry, swamp, jungle, thickly wooded, high brush, or rocky.</li> <li>(2) Deepness of the ravines and the draws.</li> <li>(3) Size, type, strength, and condition of the bridges.</li> <li>(4) Effect on armored and wheeled vehicles.</li> </ul> </li> <li>j. Data on the enemy, including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The strength.</li> <li>(2) The disposition.</li> <li>(3) The condition of the defense.</li> <li>(4) The equipment and weapons.</li> <li>(5) The morale of personnel.</li> <li>(6) The exact location.</li> <li>(7) A shift in disposition.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(8) The time that the activity was observed and the coordinates where the activity occurred.</p> <p>k. Any map corrections.</p> <p>l. Any miscellaneous information, including aspects of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) warfare.</p> <p>m. The outcome of previous enemy encounters, including—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy prisoners and their disposition.</li> <li>(2) The identification of enemy personnel.</li> <li>(3) Enemy casualties.</li> <li>(4) Captured documents and equipment.</li> </ul> <p>n. The condition of the patrol, including the disposition of the dead or wounded.</p> <p>o. Conclusions and recommendations. Included what was accomplished and any recommendations regarding the patrol equipment and tactics.</p> <p>p. The signature, grade or rank, and organization or unit of the patrol leader.</p> <p>q. Additional remarks by the interrogator and the signature of the interrogator.</p> <p>6. The element submits an NBC 1 report.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the initial NBC 1 (within 5 minutes of the activity) and follow-up reports to the unit HQ.</li> <li>b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available (by flash precedence for the initial burst and immediate precedence for subsequent attacks).</li> </ul> <p>* 7. The leaders submit an NBC 4 report.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted the report to the unit HQ.</li> <li>b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available.</li> </ul> <p>8. The elements submit a generic report.</p> <p><b>NOTE: A generic report is considered to be any report not covered in the outline above.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Submitted reports according to the unit SOPs.</li> <li>b. Sent reports in the correct formats.</li> <li>c. Reported information to the appropriate levels by the fastest means possible.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-2-1383	Disseminate Terrain Information (Products)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Establish a Command Post (CP) (05-2-0064)  
(FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company advance or quartering party has secured a new area. The company staff sections have assigned personnel to establish the forward CP. The advance-party element is part of the headquarters (HQ) company advance or quartering party. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) with the duties of the advance element is available. The Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) section has provided instructions relating to the preparation of the CP site. The communication requirements have been determined and requested. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The command and control (C2) of company sustainment operations continues during the company HQ "jump" to a new location. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. The advance-party element establishes the forward CP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Positioned the vehicles, tentage, and equipment to be used according to the layout plan.</li> <li>b. Set up the internal arrangement to permit immediate access to all required information.</li> <li>c. Set up maps and overlays that displayed the locations of the facilities of the proponent.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units provide digital products and operate systems to give the commander the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA) to conduct combat operations.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Constructed barriers around the forward CP as prescribed by the TACSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. The advance-party element provides staff supervision over forward tactical operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provided staff supervision over the establishment of the CP area to ensure compliance with the layout plan and the TACSOP.</li> <li>b. Established communications with higher HQ and adjacent and subordinate units as prescribed by the movement order and the TACSOP.</li> <li>c. Provided movement assistance to the subordinate units that were out of the range of rear CP communications.</li> <li>d. Maintained SA overlays with the current disposition of the friendly and enemy units.</li> </ul> <p>3. The advance-party element provides staff supervision over forward-proponent support operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintained current, updated reports of all proponent assets.</li> <li>b. Maintained current, updated reports of the availability of proponent assets.</li> <li>c. Maintained SA overlays with current friendly facilities in the company area of responsibility.</li> <li>d. Maintained current customer listings.</li> <li>e. Maintained current staff files and journals.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Relayed operational information from customer units to the rear company HQ that affected the proponent support operations. g. Provided current operations briefings to the S2, S3, and respective staff sections upon the arrival of the main body.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans (05-2-0314)  
 (FM 90-7) (FM 20-32)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The engineer company is supporting a maneuver task force (TF) that is planning for defensive operations. The TF commander has received guidance. The obstacles and direct- and indirect-fire plans have been approved. The digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The integration plan supports the TF commander's scheme of maneuver. The obstacles must be integrated with direct and indirect fires to achieve the desired effect on the enemy. The digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander or the executive officer (XO) assists the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) in the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Analyzed the terrain to identify assembly areas (AAs) and maneuver controls (MCs).</li> <li>b. Determined the size of the enemy force that each AA could support.</li> <li>c. Determined where the enemy was vulnerable.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units request Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products and All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) support from higher headquarters (HQ).</b></p> <p>* 2. The commander decides how he wants to use the obstacles to support the scheme of maneuver. At TF level, obstacle intent identifies the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The target. Identified the size of the unit that the obstacles were targeting.</li> <li>b. The obstacle effect. Ensured that the subordinate units knew the desired obstacle effect (disrupt, turn, fix, or block).</li> <li>c. The relative location.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. The commander or the XO ensures that fire support (FS) targets are incorporated into the obstacle plan.</p> <p>* 4. The commander or the XO ensures that adequate direct-fire systems, based on the target of the obstacles, are resourced to overwatch the obstacles.</p> <p>* 5. The element leader coordinates with the supported units to site the obstacles for coverage by the direct-fire systems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determined or refined the target reference points (TRPs) to synchronize direct and indirect fires.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the enemy could be affected in the desired manner.</li> <li>c. Coordinated for target turnover.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: The digital units use collaborative tools in the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to plan, control, and report obstacles and fire support.</b></p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-2-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Company)
05-2-0314	Integrate Obstacles Into Direct- and Indirect-Fire Plans
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008)  
 (FM 5-71-2) (FM 5-34)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is performing tactical operations in a contemporary operating environment. The company receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPORD. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The unit is linked to the task force (TF) tactical operations center (TOC). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The OPORD follows the intent of the commander, is understandable, and contains all of the information necessary to accomplish the mission. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The element leader writes an OPORD following the five-paragraph format.  <b>NOTE: Digital units write and disseminate the OPORD using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), perform collaborative planning, and submit orders/requests and reports according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the situation paragraph contained information about the enemy forces, friendly forces, attachments, and detachments.</li> <li>b. Stated the mission clearly. Included who, what, when, where, and why.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the execution paragraph included the intent of the commander, the subordinate unit instructions, and coordinating instructions.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE: Address any environmental considerations in the coordinating instructions. Include specific measures to minimize environmental damage.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Ensured that the service support paragraph contained combat service support (CSS) and unit support instructions. If the paragraph was too long, used an annex. Otherwise, used the following paragraph sample format:                         <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Material and services.</li> <li>(2) Medical.</li> <li>(3) Personnel.</li> <li>(4) Civil military.</li> <li>(5) As necessary.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Ensured that the command and signal paragraphs specified the command post (CP) locations for supporting the units and gave the instructions for coordinating and establishing communications by different means (digital and FM).</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The element leader ensures that the necessary information is included and briefed to the subordinate elements.</p> <p>* 3. The element leader ensures that the order is disseminated or briefed in time to satisfy the one-third/two-third rule (allowing subordinates two-thirds of the available time).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-1389	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-1-1393	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-4-1372	Disseminate Terrain Information Product
05-4-1376	Perform a Geospatial Collection Effort
05-6-0088	Coordinate Geospatial Operations

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

- ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Six Engineer Squads  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Assault Sections  
 Obstacle Section  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-3-0214.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-18) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-19)  
 (FM 24-33)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is tactically deployed and must establish the communications network. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The operators have been briefed and issued extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI), the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the numerical cipher, the authenticated system, the operations codes, and the brevity lists. Situational hazards exist, such as nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional-finding ability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Radio operators install a radio set for operation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Secured radios in the mount.</li> <li>b. Connected audio accessories.</li> <li>c. Installed antennas.</li> <li>d. Performed before-operation, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).</li> <li>e. Performed radio operational checks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Radio operators make initial entry into the nets.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Obtained appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from the SOI or SSI.</li> <li>b. Entered a radio net.</li> <li>c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Recognized jamming or interference.</li> <li>b. Determined if the interference was internal or external.</li> <li>c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Radio operators initiate prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Continued to operate.</li> <li>b. Increased the transmit power.</li> <li>c. Tuned the receiver for max signal.</li> <li>d. Relocated the antenna.</li> <li>e. Requested a change of frequency.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor. g. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder reports.  5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures. a. Used communications security (COMSEC) equipment (secure), if available (transmission security [TSEC]/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KOI-15. c. Operated only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI/SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI/SSI (not necessary in secure voice operation). e. Ensured that the length was not more than 20 seconds per transmission and that the number of transmissions was at a minimum. f. Operated on the lowest power setting required to communicate with desired stations. g. Employed the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Complied with net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoon Headquarters  
 Assault and Obstacle Platoon Headquarters  
 Two Engineer Platoons

**TASK:** Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINGGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)  
 (FM 24-19) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-18)  
 (FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The team has been briefed and given extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area before going to the field location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The SINGGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensured that the vehicular and manpack systems were assembled correctly.</li> </ul> <p><b>WARNING: HIGH VOLTAGES EXIST AT CONNECTOR J1 ON THE MOUNTING ADAPTER. ENSURE THAT J1 IS COVERED OR CAPPED WHEN NOT IN USE.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack system only).</li> <li>c. Ensured that preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. The supervisor selects the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selected primary and alternate locations within the general site.</li> <li>b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline.</li> <li>c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment.</li> <li>d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.</li> </ul> <p>3. Net members perform premission checks for a SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed before-operation PMCS.</li> <li>b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only).</li> <li>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (integrated communications security [ICOM] only).</li> <li>d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13.</li> </ul> <p>4. The net control station (NCS) performs premission checks for the SINGGARS FH cold-start net opening.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed preoperational PMCS.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only).</p> <p>c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only).</p> <p>d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13.</p> <p>e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>f. Loaded the cue frequency.</p> <p>g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency, as required.</p> <p>h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>5. The NCS opens the net.</p> <p>a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel.</p> <p>b. Issued and sent the electronic countercountermeasures [ECCM] electronic remote fill (ERF) instructions.</p> <p>c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call.</p> <p>d. Opened the net.</p> <p>e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called the missing net members.</p> <p>f. Repeated the cold start.</p> <p>g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</p> <p>6. Net members enter the net.</p> <p>a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call.</p> <p>b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON.</p> <p>c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</p> <p>d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel.</p> <p>e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call.</p> <p>7. Net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method.</p> <p>a. Performed premission checks for an FH cold start.</p> <p>b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI/SSI.</p> <p>c. Initiated the cue call.</p> <p>d. Reported into the net.</p> <p>e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening.</p> <p>8. Net members use proper radio procedures.</p> <p>a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum.</p> <p>b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate.</p> <p>c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies.</p> <p>d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence.</p> <p>e. Operated on a random schedule.</p> <p>f. Adhered to net discipline.</p> <p>9. Team members recognize different types of interference.</p> <p>a. Checked the RT signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting.</p> <p><b>NOTE: If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external.</b></p> <p>b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms.</p> <p>10. Team members initiate ECCM actions.</p> <p>a. Continued to operate.</p> <p>b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear.</p> <p>c. Reduced the transmission speed.</p> <p>d. Increased the transmitter power.</p> <p>e. Relocated the antenna.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF).</p> <p>11. Team members extend the range of the radio station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability.</li> <li>b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method.</li> <li>c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.</li> </ul> <p>12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas.</li> <li>b. Performed preoperational PMCS.</li> <li>c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C.</li> <li>d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D.</li> <li>e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only).</li> <li>f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only).</li> <li>g. Cued the LNE using radio D.</li> <li>h. Stored the ERF into both radios.</li> <li>i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID.</li> <li>j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to RXMT.</li> </ul> <p>13. Team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the net control interface (NCI) cue channel, as required.</li> <li>b. Switched to NRI MAN channel.</li> <li>c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel.</li> <li>d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.</li> </ul> <p>14. Team members maintain the SINCGARS radio net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performed PMCS, as required.</li> <li>b. Performed fault isolation, as required.</li> <li>c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required.</li> <li>d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required.</li> <li>e. Completed the necessary entries in the maintenance record.</li> <li>f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor.</li> </ul> <p>15. The NCS closes the net.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions.</li> <li>b. Acknowledged the net members.</li> <li>c. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence.</li> <li>d. Performed after-operation PMCS.</li> </ul>		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



**ELEMENT:** Company Headquarters

**TASK:** Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A)  
(FM 12-6) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has resumed combat operations. Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. During operations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level I threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Casualty processing and replacement actions continue during lulls in combat operations. The task may occur in a field environment or during military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT). A tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The personnel situation report (SITREP), which accounts for all company personnel, is reported daily or as required. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when performing it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The headquarters (HQ) element collects strength information reports from subordinate sections.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logged the SITREP and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Verified strength data.</li> <li>c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The HQ element processes information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidated the personnel information of subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Determined critical shortages and cross-leveling requirements.</li> <li>c. Updated the battle roster.</li> <li>d. Prepared a hasty personnel status report (PSR) and strength reports.</li> <li>e. Submitted PSR to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The HQ element processes replacements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed replacements on the mission, tactical situation, company policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or company orientation.</li> <li>b. Added soldiers' names to the battle roster.</li> <li>c. Inspected critical clothing and equipment for shortages.</li> <li>d. Coordinated the issue of needed items.</li> <li>e. Arranged the movement of replacements to the platoon of assignment.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. The first sergeant (1SG) disseminates strength information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefed the commander on unit strength and replacement status.</li> <li>b. Forwarded the personnel SITREP or hasty strength reports, casualty feeder reports, and witness statements to the supporting Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section.</li> <li>c. Informed subordinate sections of projected replacements.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 5. The company commander performs strength management functions.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directed cross leveling.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Verified combat critical personnel requirements. c. Reviewed strength management reports. d. Spot-checked strength information processing. e. Briefed superiors on unit strength and replacement status.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**

**ELEMENTS:** Company Headquarters  
Company

**TASK:** Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)  
(FM 22-51) (AR 27-1) (AR 600-15)  
(AR 608-99) (FM 21-20) (FM 6-22.5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The task may occur in a field environment or during military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT). The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to maintain and inform subordinate units of the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The company commander executes actions to keep soldiers informed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations.</li> <li>c. Instructed the soldiers of the leaders' intentions.</li> <li>d. Spoke positively concerning unit mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Reduced and prevented rumors.</li> <li>g. Disseminated command information to include the availability of religious support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) implements the unit sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed the unit sleep plan.</li> <li>b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep.</li> <li>c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest where possible.</li> <li>d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest.</li> <li>e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. All leaders implement task rotation restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks.</li> <li>b. Developed plans for the rotation of soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate efforts).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and stress management techniques.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques before deployment.</li> <li>b. Ensured that the unit implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>c. Ensured that soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed.</li> <li>d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived soldiers into the unit.</li> <li>e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty, stressed, or battle-fatigued soldiers into the unit.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. The company commander or 1SG implements stress treatment techniques.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Developed a plan to deal with mild and more serious stress or battle fatigue cases.</li> <li>b. Assigned soldiers, who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue, to perform simpler tasks.</li> <li>c. Ensured that soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior toward soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue.</li> <li>d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers who did not show improvement after resting to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities.</li> <li>e. Referred soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue and those who were not recuperating for medical care.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed.</li> <li>b. Provided hot rations.</li> <li>c. Coordinated postal support.</li> <li>d. Coordinated combat payments.</li> <li>e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support.</li> <li>f. Coordinated the issue and sale of soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items.</li> <li>g. Coordinated legal support.</li> <li>h. Advised higher headquarters on the unit MWR status.</li> </ul> <p>* 7. All leaders maintain soldiers' fitness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitored soldiers' fitness.</li> <li>b. Conducted physical training (as the time and combat situation allowed).</li> <li>c. Implemented personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Corrected problem areas.</li> <li>e. Briefed the commander on the soldiers' fitness status.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of reported violations of the UCMJ.</li> <li>b. Administered nonjudicial punishment.</li> <li>c. Forwarded charges for trial by court-martial.</li> </ul> <p>* 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other-than-judicial or nonjudicial proceedings.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Counseled soldiers for indebtedness.</li> <li>b. Counseled soldiers for nonsupport of dependents.</li> <li>c. Initiated letters of reprimand or admonition.</li> <li>d. Initiated administrative separations.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b>							
<b>ITERATION</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE**

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE**

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE**



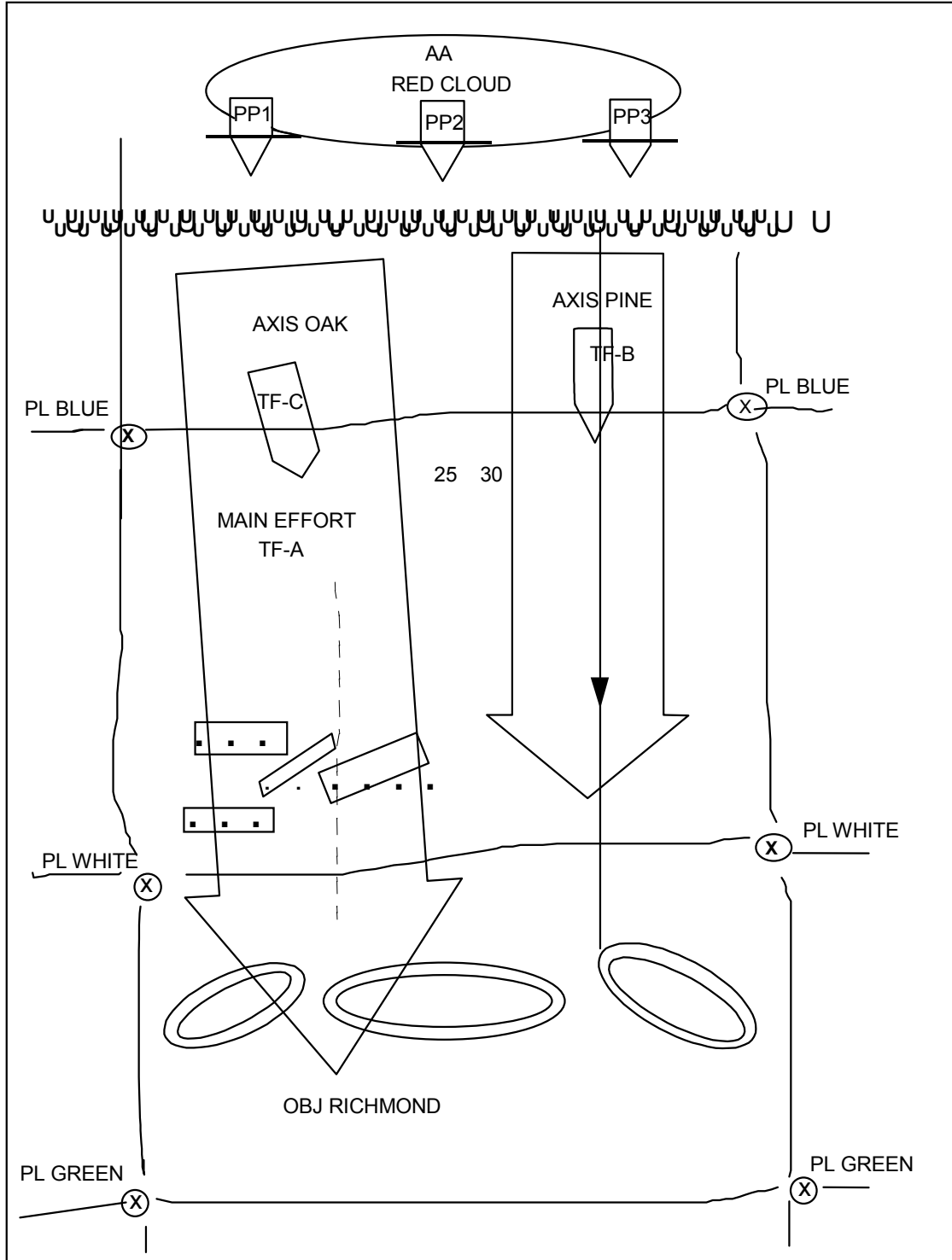
## CHAPTER 6

6-1. General. An external evaluation is used to assess the ability of the unit to perform its mission. Units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs from Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and the MILES are used for the evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify the unit strengths and weaknesses. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the unit capabilities. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the mission and the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. Procedures for developing the evaluation are discussed below.

**Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario**

Event	Action	Proposed Time Frame	Estimated Time Allotted
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Before start time	
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 0200 hours	2 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	0400 hours	5 hours
5	Occupy an AA	0900 hours	3 hours
<b>Module 1</b>			
6	Receive a WO	1200 hours	2 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
<b>Module 2</b>			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 - 1400 hours	
13	Receive a WO		
14	Support Combat Operations (Countermobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	ENDEX		



**Figure 6-1. Sample Graphic Illustration Scenario**

- a. Identify the missions for evaluating each element from Figure 2-2. Record the selected missions on Department of the Army (DA) Form 7506.
- b. List each mission on a separate DA Form 7502.



c. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheet, which is used for recording the results of the evaluation.

d. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order that they logically occur in the detailed scenario (Table 6-1). Group the selected missions and tasks into parts for continuous operations. The parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess the MILES casualties and to conduct in-process AARs.

6-3. **Resourcing and Planning.** Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

**Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements**

<b>CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001</b>			
<b>Ammunition</b>	<b>DODIC</b>	<b>Estimated Basic Load</b>	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
<b>Demolitions (See note below.)</b>			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
<b>Other Items</b>			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
<b>Class IV</b>			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
<b>MILES Equipment</b>	<b>Company</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>OPFOR</b>
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
<b>NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the exercise.</b>			

6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team comprised of the following personnel is suggested for performing an external evaluation:

- (1) Senior O/C.
- (2) Staff O/C.
- (3) Operations O/C.
- (4) Administration O/C.
- (5) Logistics O/C.
- (6) NBC O/C.

b. The O/Cs must have a thorough knowledge of the unit mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports force protection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC operations. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in NBC and local-defense, common-task areas. The O/Cs should be equal in grade to the soldier in charge of the element they are evaluating, and should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as a team member, and state their findings in reports and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes—

- (1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list, and the specific evaluation purposes and objectives.
- (2) The unit METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this MTP.
- (3) The O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.
- (4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master events list items that are their responsibility. These include—
  - (a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the O/Cs folders.
  - (b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.
  - (c) The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.
  - (d) Safety procedures.
  - (e) Evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.
  - (f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation. This includes war-gaming all items on the master events list in order of occurrence and reviewing each team member's responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the O/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the unit AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the unit is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or a senior noncommissioned officer (NCO) who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities and must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. The training includes—

- (1) Threat tactics and rules of engagement.
- (2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- (3) OPFOR tasks and standards.
- (4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- (5) C2.
- (6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

a. The HQ two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. It issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR.

b. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and must advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is developed by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

a. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit performance of each

mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

**Step 1.** Identify the MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

**Step 2.** Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit performances of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation plan task.

**Step 3.** Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

**Step 4.** Record the overall unit capability to perform the task by using the GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

- **GO.** The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standard.
- **NO-GO.** The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

b. Use DA Forms 7503, 7504, and 7505 to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the final overall unit rating.

(1) DA Form 7503 is used to record information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(2) DA Form 7504 is used to record information concerning the element personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

(3) DA Form 7505 is used to record personnel and equipment status.

6-8. Preparing After-Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-action phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are—

(1) **Planning.** Planning for AARs is started in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified O/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) **Preparation.** AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable O/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) **Conduct.** AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of

the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR purpose, the establishment of the AAR ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. A successful AAR follows these guidelines:

- (a) AARs are not critiques, but are professional discussions of training events.
- (b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner to ensure that participants openly discuss the lessons.
- (c) Dialogue is encouraged among O/Cs and unit personnel.
- (d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation should be present for the AAR. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.
- (e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also why it happened and how it could have been done better.
- (f) Participants review the sequence of events associated with hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.
- (g) Events not directly related to major events are not examined.
- (h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.
- (i) The AAR end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

**NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TC) 25-6 and 25-20 and FM 25-101.**



## APPENDIX A

For use of the OPORD, refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

<b>OPERATION ORDER</b>	
(classification) FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY	
Operation Order _____ 20_____	Copy ___ of ___ copies 25th Engineer Battalion
Task Organization:	
1. SITUATION.	
<p>a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. It is being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest INTSUM indicates that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.</p> <p>b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery is in direct support.</p>	
2. MISSION. The TF conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.	
3. EXECUTION.	
<p>a. Concept of the Operation: See the overlay developed by the trainer in the field.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs AA Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the main body of the enemy so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy it. It is necessary to destroy enemy combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If the unit cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).</p>	

**Figure A-1. Sample OPORD**

(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical checkpoints and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.

b. Subunit Missions (as required).

c. Engineer. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

d. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Report all enemy contact.

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

(3) Report crossing of the PLs.

(4) Additional information, as required.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the brigade SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current SOI.

(2) Radio-listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY  
(classification)

**Figure A-1. Sample OPORD (continued)**



## APPENDIX B

### B-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and has changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia will still have the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possesses formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US, the former Soviet republics, or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

B-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into the rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into the rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C2.
- Agents and saboteurs.

B-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

B-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (such as mortars, howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even by a global power. For example, in the past, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies, civil wars, or

border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

B-5. Special Situations.

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special-condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

B-6. Bottom Line. The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

## APPENDIX C

Table C-1. Metric Conversion Chart

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
<b>Length</b>		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.04470	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
<b>Weight</b>		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Metric Units	Multiplied By	Equals US Units
<b>Length</b>		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
<b>Volume</b>		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
<b>Weight</b>		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds



**GLOSSARY****1SG**

first sergeant

**5 Ss and T**

search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag

**AA**

avenue of approach; assembly area; antiaircraft; anchor assembly

**AAR**

after-action review; after-action report

**ABCS**

Army Battle Command System

**ABE**

assistant brigade engineer

**ABF**

attack by fire (position)

**AC**

active component; alternating current

**ADA**

air defense artillery

**ADAM**

area denial artillery munition

**ADC**

area damage control

**AHD**

antihandling device

**ALOC**

Administrative Logistical Operations Center

**AN/PSS-12**

hand-held, portable mine-detecting set

**AO**

area of operations

**AOAP**

Army Oil Analysis Program

**AOR**

area of responsibility

**AP**

antipersonnel

**APC**

armored personnel carrier

**AR**

Army regulation; armor; angle of repose

**ARTEP**

Army Training and Evaluation Program

**ASAS**

All-Source Analysis System

**AT**

antiterrorism; antitank

**ATTN**

attention

**ATWESS**

antitank weapon effects signature simulator; Antitank Weapon Effects Simulator System

**BDAR**

battle damage assessment and repair

**BF**

battle fatigue; board feet

**BIT**

built-in test

**BMO**

battalion maintenance officer

**BOMREP**

bombing report

**BOS**

battlefield operating system

**BP**

battle position; building pedestal (single story only); baseplate (single story and double story)

**C2**

command and control

**CAS**

casualty; close air support

**CASEVAC**

casualty evacuation

**CATK**

counterattack

**CATS**

combined arms training strategy

**CCT**  
combat-control team

**CDM**  
chemical downwind message

**CFX**  
command field exercise

**CFZ**  
critical friendly zone

**CHS**  
combat health support

**Class IV**  
Construction materials, including installed equipment and all fortification and obstacle materials.

**Class V**  
Ammunition of all types, including chemical, bombs, explosives, mines, fuzes, detonators, pyrotechnics, missiles, rockets, propellants, and other associate items.

**COA**  
course of action

**COMEX**  
communications exercise

**COMSEC**  
communications security

**COP**  
common operational picture

**CP**  
command post; checkpoint

**CPX**  
command post exercise

**CS**  
combat support; Costa Rica; o-clorobenzylidene malononitrile

**CSS**  
combat service support

**CSSCS**  
Combat Service Support Control System

**DA**  
Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action

**DC**  
Dental Corps; District of Columbia; direct current

**DCU**

dispenser control unit; digital-control unit

**DD**

Department of Defense

**DODIC**

Department of Defense identification code

**DRS**

direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System

**DST**

decision-support template; Driver Skills Trainer

**DTG**

date-time group

**DTSS**

Digital Topographic Support System

**DZ**

drop zone

**DZST**

drop zone support team

**EA**

each; engagement area

**EBA**

engineer battlefield assessment

**ECCM**

electronic countercountermeasures

**EEFI**

essential elements of friendly information

**EEI**

essential elements of information

**EM**

electronic media; engineer manual; earthmoving; enlisted member

**EMO**

electronic media only

**ENDEX**

end of exercise

**EOD**

explosive ordnance disposal

**EPW**

enemy prisoner of war



**ERF**

electronic remote fill; electronic countercountermeasures (ECCM) remote fill

**ERP**

engineer regulating point; effective radiated power; emitter receiver processor; en route reporting points; end-route rally point; enhanced radiation projectile

**etc**

et cetera

**EW**

electronic warfare

**FBCB2**

Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below

**FH**

field hospital; frequency hopping

**field of fire**

The area which a weapon or group of weapons may effectively cover with fire from a given position.

**final protection fires (FPF)**

An immediately available prearranged barrier of fire designed to impede enemy movement across defensive lines or areas.

**FIST**

fire support team

**FLOT**

forward line of own troops

**FM**

field manual; frequency-modulated; frequency modulation

**FO**

forward observer

**FPF**

final protective fire; final protection fires

**FPL**

final protective line

**FPOL**

forward passage of lines

**FRAGO**

fragmentary order

**FS**

fire support; foresight; Fort Sill

**FSB**

forward support battalion

**FSO**

fire support officer; food service officer

**FST**

field sanitation team; fire support team

**FTX**

field training exercise

**GRREG**

graves registration

**HHC**

headquarters and headquarters company

**HN**

host nation

**HQ**

headquarters

**ICOM**

imbedded communications; Intercommunications System; integrated communications security

**IMETS**

Integrated Meteorological System

**INTREP**

intelligence report

**INTSUM**

intelligence summary

**IOE**

irregular outer edge

**IPB**

intelligence preparation of the battlefield; intelligence preparation of the battlespace

**kmph**

kilometers per hour

**LCE**

load-carrying equipment

**LD**

line of departure

**LNE**

late net entry

**LOG PAC**

logistics package

**LOGPAC**

logistics package; logistical package

**LRP**

logistics release point; land roller pedestal (used to receive launch nose in DS construction)

**LZ**

landing zone

**M/S**

mobility/survivability

**M4T6**

a type of standard, hand-assembled military bridge.

**MACOM**

major Army command

**MANSCEN**

Maneuver Support Center

**MAPEX**

map exercise

**MC**

Medical Corps; maneuver control; medium cure

**MCS**

Maneuver Control System

**MCSR**

materiel condition status report

**MDI**

modernized demolition initiator

**MDMP**

military decision-making process

**MEDEVAC**

medical evacuation

**METL**

mission-essential task list

**METT-TC**

mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

**MHE**

materials-handling equipment

**MICLIC**

mine clearing line charge

**MIJI**

meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference

**MILES**

Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

**MLC**

military load classification; military load class

**mm**

millimeter(s)

**MO**

Missouri; monthly

**MOPMS**

Modular-Pack Mine System

**MOPP**

mission-oriented protective posture

**MOPP2**

mission-oriented protective posture Level 2 (mask carried/worn, protective suit and boots worn, and gloves carried)

**MOPP4**

mission-oriented protective posture Level 4 (mask, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn)

**MORTREP**

mortar bombing report

**MOS**

military occupational specialty; minimum operating strip

**MOUT**

military operations on urbanized terrain

**MP**

military police

**MPS**

meters per second

**MSR**

main supply route

**MSRT**

mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal

**MTF**

medical-treatment facility

**MTP**

mission training plan; MOS training plan

**MWR**

morale, welfare, and recreation

**NATO**

North Atlantic Treaty Organization

**NBC**

nuclear, biological, and chemical

**NBC 1 Report**

Observer's Initial Report. This report is used by the observing unit to give basic, initial, and follow-up data about an NBC attack. This report is sent by platoons and companies to the battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC Center (NBCC).

**NBC 4 Report**

Monitoring and Survey Report. This report is used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.

**NBC 5 Report**

Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, the division prepares an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.

**NCI**

net control interface

**NCO**

noncommissioned officer

**NCOER**

noncommissioned officer evaluation report

**NCOIC**

noncommissioned officer in charge

**NCS**

net control station

**No.**

number

**non-ICOM**

nonintegrated communications security

**NRI**

net radio interface

**O/C**

observer/controller

**OBJ**

objective

**OBM**

outboard motor

**OBSDOC**

obstacle document

**OBSTINTEL**

obstacle intelligence

**OEG**

operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance

**OER**

officer evaluation report

**OIC**

officer in charge

**OP**

observation post; operational procedure

**OPCON**

operational control

**OPFOR**

opposing forces

**OPLAN**

operation plan

**OPORD**

operation order

**OPSEC**

operations security

**P**

needs practice; pass; passed; barometric pressure; mean radius of curvature

**PAC**

personnel and administration center

**pam**

pamphlet

**PCC**

precombat check

**PCI**

photo coverage indexes; precombat inspection

**PDDE**

power-driven decontamination equipment

**PDS**

personnel daily summary

**PIR**

priority intelligence requirements

<b>PL</b>	phase line; plastic limit; Poland
<b>PLL</b>	prescribed load list
<b>PMCS</b>	preventive-maintenance checks and services
<b>POL</b>	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
<b>POP</b>	point of penetration
<b>POS/NAV</b>	position/navigation
<b>PSG</b>	platoon sergeant
<b>PSR</b>	personnel status report
<b>PVNTMED</b>	preventive medicine
<b>R&amp;S</b>	reconnaissance and security; reconnaissance and surveillance
<b>RAAM</b>	remote antiarmor mine
<b>radiac</b>	radiation, detection, indication, and computation
<b>RATELO</b>	radiotelephone operator
<b>RB</b>	Roller beam is used to launch single story (SS) bridge; roller beam; rubber boat
<b>RC</b>	rapid cure; reserve component
<b>RES</b>	radiation exposure status
<b>RFL</b>	restrictive fire line
<b>ROE</b>	rules of engagement
<b>ROI</b>	rules of interaction

**ROKUS**

Republic of Korea, United States

**RP**

Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point; reference point; red phosphorus

**RT**

radius of target; receiver/transmitter

**RTD**

return to duty

**RXMT**

retransmit

**S1**

Adjutant (US Army)

**S2**

Intelligence Officer (US Army)

**S3**

Operations and Training Officer (US Army)

**S4**

Supply Officer (US Army)

**SA**

semiannually; situational awareness

**SALUTE**

size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment

**SANDI**

stop, assess, note, draw back, inform

**SATRAN**

satellite transmission

**SATS**

Standard Army Training System

**SAW**

squad automatic weapon

**SB**

supply bulletin; switchboard

**SBF**

support by fire

**SCATMINE**

scatterable mine



**SCATMINREC**

scatterable-minefield record

**SCATMINWARN**

scatterable-minefield warning

**SCPE**

simplified collective-protection equipment

**SHELREP**

shelling report

**SHTU**

simplified handheld terminal unit

**SIG**

signal

**SINGARS**

Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System

**SITREP**

situation report

**SOEO**

scheme of engineer operations

**SOFA**

Status of Forces Agreement

**SOI**

signal operation instructions

**SOP**

standing operating procedure

**SOSRA**

suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, and assault

**SP**

start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain

**SPOTREP**

spot report

**SSI**

standing signal instructions; signal supplemental instructions

**SSN**

social security number

**STANAG**

standardization agreement

**STB**

supertropical bleach

**STP**

soldier training publication

**STRAC**

Standards in Training Commission

**STX**

situational training exercise

**T**

trained; slab thickness; deck thickness; crown thickness; geodetic azimuth; grid azimuth; slope distance; telescope above station; time; tracked

**T&EO**

training and evaluation outline

**TACSOP**

tactical standing operating procedure

**TAI**

targeted area of interest; tactical area of interest

**TAMMS**

The Army Maintenance Management System

**TC**

technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander

**TEK**

traffic encryption key

**TEWT**

tactical exercise without troops

**TF**

task force; total float

**TM**

team; technical manual; trademark

**TNT**

trinitrotoluene

**TOC**

tactical operations center

**TOCSOP**

tactical operations center standing operating procedure

**TOE**

table(s) of organization and equipment

**TRADOC**

United States Army Training and Doctrine Command

- TRP**  
target reference point; traffic regulation plan
- TSEC**  
transmission security
- TSK**  
transmission security key
- U**  
unclassified; up; untrained; unlocked
- UAV**  
unmanned aerial vehicle
- UCMJ**  
Uniform Code of Military Justice
- UMCP**  
unit maintenance collection point
- UPW**  
unit proficiency work sheet
- US**  
United States
- USMTF**  
United States message text format
- UXO**  
unexploded ordnance
- Volcano**  
A multiple-delivery mine system dispensed from the air or on the ground.
- WAM**  
wide-area munition; wide area mine
- WCS**  
weapon control status; weapon control station
- WO**  
warrant officer; warning order
- XO**  
executive officer



## REFERENCES

### Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

#### Army Regulations

AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting. 10 June 2003
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. 3 February 1995
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. 16 September 1997
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997
AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994

#### Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 5-332-68-MTP	Headquarters, Headquarters Detachment, Engineer Brigade. 8 July 2003
ARTEP 5-335-66-MTP	Engineer Combat Battalion, Engineer Brigade, Heavy Division, Battalion Staff. 25 June 1999
ARTEP 5-335-DRILL	Engineer Drills. 11 January 2001
ARTEP 5-336-34-MTP	Headquarters and Headquarters Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Heavy Division. To be completed within six months.
ARTEP 5-337-10-MTP	Engineer Platoon, Engineer Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Heavy Division. To be completed within six months.
ARTEP 7-8-DRILL	Battle Drills for the Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 25 June 2002

#### Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1248	Road Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1249	Bridge Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1250	Tunnel Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1251	Ford Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1252	Ferry Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1355	Minefield Record. 1 March 1987
DA FORM 1711-R	Engineer Reconnaissance Report. 1 May 1985

DA FORM 2028	Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. 1 February 1974
DA FORM 2166-8	Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Report. 1 October 2001
DA FORM 2166-8-1	Noncommissioned Officer Counseling Checklist/Record. 1 October 2001
DA FORM 67-9	Officer Evaluation Report. 1 October 1997
DA FORM 7502	Task Summary Sheet. 1 April 2003
DA FORM 7503	Environmental Data Sheet. 1 April 2003
DA FORM 7504	Personnel and Equipment Loss Report. 1 April 2003
DA FORM 7505	Unit Data Sheet. 1 April 2003
DA FORM 7506	Unit Proficiency/Evaluation Worksheet. 1 April 2003
DA FORM 7507	ARTEP Mission Training Plan User Feedback. 1 April 2003

#### **Department of Army Pamphlets**

DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 31 December 1997
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

#### **Department of Defense Publications**

DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996
--------------	---

#### **Field Manuals**

FM 100-10	Combat Service Support. 3 October 1995
FM 100-13	Battlefield Coordination Detachment (BCD). 5 September 1996
FM 100-16	Army Operational Support. 31 May 1995
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics. 30 September 1997
FM 10-23-1	Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations. 17 March 1992
FM 10-27	General Supply in Theater of Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster General Support Supply Operations. 20 April 1993
FM 10-27-2	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Quartermaster Direct Support Supply and Field Service Operations. 18 June 1991
FM 10-27-4	Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders. 14 April 2000
FM 1-05	Religious Support. 18 April 2003
FM 10-500-1	Airdrop Support Operations in a Theater of Operations. 19 June 1991
FM 10-52	Water Supply in Theaters of Operations. 11 July 1990
FM 10-64	Mortuary Affairs Operations. 16 February 1999
FM 10-67-1	Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations. 2 April 1998
FM 11-41	Signal Support: Echelons Corps and Below (ECB). 18 December 1991
FM 11-50	Combat Communications Within the Division (Heavy & Light). 4 April 1991
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 14-100	Financial Management Operations. 7 May 1997
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984

FM 22-51 Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994  
 FM 24-1 Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990  
 FM 24-18 Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987  
 FM 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991  
 FM 24-33 Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990  
 FM 24-35 Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990  
 FM 24-35-1 Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990  
 FM 25-101 Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990  
 FM 3-0 Operations. 14 June 2001  
 FM 3-11 Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations. 10 March 2003  
 FM 3-11.11 Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 10 March 2003  
 FM 3-19 NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993  
 FM 3-19.30 Physical Security. 8 January 2001  
 FM 3-19.4 Military Police Leaders' Handbook. 4 March 2002  
 FM 3-19.40 Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001  
 FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon. 2 December 2002  
 FM 3-21.38 Pathfinder Operations. 1 October 2002  
 FM 3-21.71 Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002  
 FM 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992  
 FM 3-34.2 Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000  
 FM 3-4 NBC Protection. 29 May 1992  
 FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994  
 FM 34-2 Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994  
 FM 34-2-1 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance. 19 June 1991  
 FM 34-3 Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990  
 FM 34-45 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Electronic Attack. 9 June 2000  
 FM 34-5 Human Intelligence and Related Counterintelligence Operations. 29 July 1994  
 FM 34-60 Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995  
 FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000  
 FM 3-50 Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990  
 FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 9 December 2002  
 FM 4-02 Force Health Protection in a Global Environment. 13 February 2003  
 FM 4-02.6 The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 1 August 2002  
 FM 4-25.12 Unit Field Sanitation Team. 25 January 2002  
 FM 4-30.13 Ammunition Handbook: Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Munitions Handlers. 1 March 2001  
 FM 4-30.3 Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000  
 FM 44-100 US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000  
 FM 44-64 SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997  
 FM 44-8 Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999  
 FM 44-80 Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996  
 FM 4-93.4 Theater Support Command. 15 April 2003

FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-100-15	Corps Engineer Operations. 6 June 1995
FM 5-102	Countermobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-33	Terrain Analysis. 11 July 1990
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-410	Military Soils Engineering. 23 December 1992
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994
FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994
FM 5-480	Port Construction and Repair. 12 December 1990
FM 55-1	Transportation Operations. 3 October 1995
FM 55-20	Rail Transport in a Theater of Operations. 1 June 2000
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-100	Division Engineer Combat Operations. 22 April 1993
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995
FM 6-22.5	Combat Stress. 23 June 2000
FM 63-1	Support Battalions and Squadrons, Separate Brigades and Armored Cavalry Regiment. 30 September 1993
FM 63-11	Logistics Support Element Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 8 October 1996
FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991
FM 63-20	Forward Support Battalion. 26 February 1990
FM 63-21	Main Support Battalion. 7 August 1990
FM 63-3	Corps Support Command. 30 September 1993
FM 7-0	Training the Force. 22 October 2002
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 7-92	The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, Light Infantry). 23 December 1992
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 14 April 2000
FM 8-51	Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994
FM 8-55	Planning for Health Service Support. 9 September 1994
FM 90-13	River-Crossing Operations. 26 January 1998
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994
FM 9-43-2	Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair. 3 October 1995



**Other Product Types**

STANAG 2036 Land Mine Laying, Marking, Recording and Reporting Procedures.  
28 January 1999

TRADOC PAM 11-9 Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990

**Soldier Training Publications**

STP 5-12B1-SM MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Level 1, Soldier's Manual.  
2 December 2002

STP 5-12B24-SM-TG MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Levels 2/3/4, Soldier's Manual and  
Trainer's Guide. 28 March 2003

STP 5-62G13-SM-TG MOS 62G, Quarrying Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3, Soldier's Manual and  
Trainer's Guide. 5 May 1986

**Technical Manuals**

TM 11-5805-262-12 Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone,  
Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-  
715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-  
9653)). 15 June 1990

TM 11-5805-294-12 Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual  
Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202).  
8 September 1983

TM 750-244-2 Procedures for Destruction of Electronics Materiel to Prevent Enemy Use  
(Electronics Command). 14 March 1972

TM 750-244-3 Procedures for Destruction of Equipment to Prevent Enemy Use (Mobility  
Equipment Command). 23 September 1969

TM 750-244-6 Procedures for Destruction of Tank-Automotive Equipment to Prevent  
Enemy Use (US Army Tank-Automotive Command). 3 October 1972

TM 750-244-7 Procedures for Destruction of Equipment in Federal Supply  
Classifications 1000, 1005, 1010, 1015, 1020, 1025, 1030, 1055, 1090  
and 1095 to Prevent Enemy Use. 18 June 1970

**Training Circulars**

TC 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988

TC 25-20 A Leader's Guide to After Action Reviews. 30 September 1993

TC 25-6 Force-on-Force Collective Training Using the Tactical Engagement  
Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995

**Related Publications**

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

**Army Training and Evaluation Program**

ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP Engineer Company, Engineer Combat Battalion, Heavy Division.

**Other Product Types**

UCMJ Uniform Code of Military Justice



<b>ARTEP MISSION TRAINING PLAN USER FEEDBACK</b> For use of this form, see the applicable ARTEP MTP; the proponent agency is TRADOC.	
An important aspect of the MTP is user feedback. To produce the best possible product that meets the needs of the leader and trainer, your opinion of this product is solicited and will be helpful in the development of future products and revisions to this product. Please answer all questions frankly by checking your response or by providing specific comments.	
1. MTP NUMBER	2. DATE (YYYYMMDD)
3. MTP TITLE	
4. NAME	5. DUTY POSITION
6. ADDRESS	7. PHONE NUMBER
	8. FAX PHONE NUMBER
	9. E-MAIL ADDRESS
YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/> 10. Do chapters 1 through 6 and the appendices aid in the understanding and use of this MTP?	
YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/> 11. Are training objectives complete, correct, and clear?	
YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/> 12. Is the MTP written so that it is usable by the first-line supervisor?	
YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/> 13. Are the conditions and standards realistic?	
14. COMMENTS	

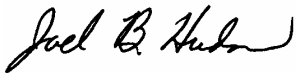


**ARTEP 5-337-35-MTP  
23 SEPTEMBER 2003**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

**PETER J. SCHOOMAKER**  
General, United States Army  
Chief of Staff

Official:



**JOEL B. HUDSON**  
Administrative Assistant to the  
Secretary of the Army  
0323207

DISTRIBUTION:

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve:* Not to be distributed.  
Electronic Means Only.

**PIN: 081012-000**